

# Tru64 UNIX

---

## Installation Guide

Part Number: AA-RH8SC-TE

**August 2000**

**Product Version:** Tru64 UNIX Version 5.1

The manual describes how to install Version 5.1 of the Compaq Tru64™ UNIX operating system on a single system.

---

© 2000 Compaq Computer Corporation

COMPAQ, the Compaq logo, AlphaPC, AlphaServer, AlphaStation, Compaq Insight Manager, LAT, POLYCENTER, QVision, and TruCluster Registered in the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office. Tru64 is a trademark of Compaq Information Technologies Group, L.P.

UNIX is a trademark of The Open Group. Windows NT is a trademark of Microsoft Corporation. All other product names mentioned herein may be trademarks of their respective companies.

Confidential computer software. Valid license from Compaq required for possession, use, or copying. Consistent with FAR 12.211 and 12.212, Commercial Computer Software, Computer Software Documentation, and Technical Data for Commercial Items are licensed to the U.S. Government under vendor's standard commercial license.

Compaq shall not be liable for technical or editorial errors or omissions contained herein. The information in this document is subject to change without notice.

THE INFORMATION IN THIS PUBLICATION IS PROVIDED "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND. THE ENTIRE RISK ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF THIS INFORMATION REMAINS WITH RECIPIENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL COMPAQ BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, CONSEQUENTIAL, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, PUNITIVE, OR OTHER DAMAGES WHATSOEVER (INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION, DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF BUSINESS PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR LOSS OF BUSINESS INFORMATION), EVEN IF COMPAQ HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES AND WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT OR TORT, INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE.

The limited warranties for Compaq products are exclusively set forth in the documentation accompanying such products. Nothing herein should be construed as constituting a further or additional warranty.

---

# Contents

## About This Manual

### 1 Operating System and Installation Technology Overview

1.1	Overview of the Operating System .....	1-1
1.2	What Kind of Installation Should You Perform? .....	1-2
1.3	Installing a Cluster .....	1-4
1.4	What to Do if the Operating System Is Preinstalled .....	1-5
1.5	Installation Media: CD-ROM or Network Server .....	1-5
1.6	Installation User Interfaces: Graphical and Text-Based .....	1-6
1.7	Using This Manual .....	1-6

### 2 Update Installation Overview

2.1	Description of an Update Installation .....	2-1
2.2	Cluster Rolling Upgrades .....	2-2
2.3	What Versions of the Operating System Can Be Updated to Version 5.1? .....	2-2
2.3.1	How to Determine the Version Number and Revision Level of the Operating System .....	2-3
2.4	Update Installation Features .....	2-3
2.5	Theory of Operation .....	2-5
2.6	Completion Time .....	2-8

### 3 Update Installation Procedure

3.1	Step 1: Prepare for the Update Installation .....	3-2
3.2	Step 2: Shut Down the System to Single-User Mode .....	3-5
3.3	Step 3: Start the Update Installation .....	3-5
3.4	Step 4: Choose Update Installation Options .....	3-7
3.5	Step 5: Monitor the Analysis Phase .....	3-9
3.5.1	Check for Conflicting Software .....	3-10
3.5.1.1	Software Reinstallation Warning .....	3-11
3.5.1.2	Conflicting Software Found: Update Installation Cannot Proceed .....	3-11
3.5.2	Determine Installed Software .....	3-12
3.5.3	Select Kernel Components .....	3-13

3.5.4	Manually Adding Special Configuration Options to the Kernel .....	3-14
3.5.5	Check for File Type Conflicts .....	3-15
3.5.5.1	File Type Conflicts That Halt the Update .....	3-15
3.5.5.2	Less Serious File Type Conflicts .....	3-16
3.5.6	Check for Obsolete Files .....	3-17
3.5.7	Check System File Space .....	3-18
3.6	Step 6: Confirm the Start of the Update Installation Process ..	3-21
3.7	Step 7: Log in to the System .....	3-22
3.8	Step 8: Review Update Installation Log Files .....	3-22
3.9	Step 9: Manually Merge Customizations if Necessary .....	3-23
3.10	Optional Step 10: Run the Update Installation Cleanup Utility .....	3-24
3.11	Error Recovery .....	3-25
3.11.1	Analysis Phase Failure .....	3-25
3.11.2	Software Subset Load Failure .....	3-25
3.11.3	Kernel Build Failure .....	3-25

## 4 Full Installation Overview

4.1	Summary of Full Installation Features .....	4-1
4.1.1	Dynamic Disk Partitioning .....	4-2
4.1.2	Installing Worldwide Language Support (WLS) Software ..	4-2
4.1.3	Configuring the Logical Storage Manager (LSM) .....	4-3
4.1.4	Disk Identification .....	4-4
4.1.5	Automatic Detection and Installation of Software Dependencies .....	4-4
4.1.6	Invoking User-Supplied Files to Perform Customizations ..	4-4
4.1.7	Installation Cloning .....	4-5
4.1.8	Configuration Cloning .....	4-5
4.1.9	Access to a UNIX Shell for Experienced Administrators ..	4-6
4.2	Full Installation: Defaults and User Options .....	4-7

## 5 Full Installation Prerequisite Tasks

5.1	Task 1: Check Hardware .....	5-1
5.2	Task 2: Make Sure You Have These Items .....	5-2
5.3	Task 3: Read the Release Notes .....	5-3
5.4	Optional Task 4: Migrating Your System from Windows NT for Alpha to Tru64 UNIX .....	5-4
5.5	Optional Task 5: Prepare CDFs or User-Supplied Files .....	5-5
5.6	Task 6: Back Up the System .....	5-5
5.7	Task 7: Shut Down or Power Up the Processor .....	5-5

5.8	Task 8: Update Firmware .....	5-6
5.9	Optional Task 9: Configure Hardware .....	5-7
5.9.1	Setting the Network Adapter Mode .....	5-7
5.9.2	Configure Integrated System Architecture (ISA) Devices ..	5-8
5.9.3	Install Asynchronous Transfer Mode (ATM) Adapters .....	5-9
5.9.4	Configure RAID Subsystem .....	5-9
5.9.5	Run the EISA Configuration Utility (ECU) .....	5-9
5.10	Optional Task 10: Connect Peripheral Devices .....	5-10
5.11	You Are Ready to Begin .....	5-10

## 6 Full Installation Procedures

6.1	Are You Ready to Begin? .....	6-1
6.2	Step 1: Set Processor-Specific Console Environment Variables .....	6-2
6.3	Step 2: Set Standard Console Environment Variables for All Processors .....	6-4
6.4	Step 3: Boot the System .....	6-4
6.5	Successful System Boot — Select a Language for the User Interface .....	6-6
6.6	The Welcome Screen .....	6-6
6.7	Step 4: Supplying the Setup Information Required for a Full Installation .....	6-9
6.8	Setting the Host Name .....	6-11
6.8.1	Guidelines for Choosing a Host Name .....	6-12
6.8.2	Host Name Samples .....	6-13
6.9	Setting the Date and Time .....	6-13
6.10	Setting the Location and Area (Formerly Time Zones) .....	6-14
6.11	Setting the Root Password .....	6-18
6.11.1	Guidelines for Choosing Effective Passwords .....	6-20
6.11.2	Root Password Samples .....	6-20
6.12	Choosing the Type of Software to Be Installed .....	6-20
6.12.1	Hints for Selecting Optional Software .....	6-22
6.13	Choosing the Type of Kernel Components to Build into the Kernel .....	6-24
6.14	Selecting the Type of File System Layout .....	6-26
6.14.1	When Should I Use the Default File System Layout? .....	6-27
6.14.2	When Should I Customize the File System Layout? .....	6-34
6.14.3	Partitioning Disks for a Custom File System Layout .....	6-37
6.14.4	Should I Install into LSM Volumes? .....	6-38
6.14.4.1	Selecting a Partition for the LSM Private Region .....	6-39

6.14.4.2	Special Processing for Systems Previously Configured with LSM .....	6-39
6.14.5	Preserving Data on Previously Used Disks .....	6-40
6.15	Step 5: Check Your Selections .....	6-41
6.16	Step 6: Final Confirmation .....	6-42
6.16.1	Canceling and Restarting the Full Installation .....	6-43
6.17	What Happens Next? .....	6-44
6.17.1	File System Creation and Software Subset Load Phase ...	6-44
6.17.2	System Reboot Phase .....	6-45
6.17.3	Software Configuration Phase .....	6-45
6.18	Optional Step 7: Select Kernel Components .....	6-46
6.18.1	Optional Step: Edit the Kernel File if Necessary .....	6-48
6.18.2	The Kernel Build Phase .....	6-48
6.18.3	If Your System Boots to Single-User Mode .....	6-49
6.19	Step 8: Log in to the System as the User root .....	6-49
6.20	Step 9: Review Installation Log Files .....	6-49
6.21	Full Installation Is Done .....	6-50

## 7 Configuring the System for General Use

7.1	Graphical User Interface: The System Setup Application .....	7-1
7.1.1	The Quick Setup Application .....	7-3
7.1.2	The Custom Setup Application .....	7-4
7.2	Invoking the System Setup Application After the Initial Configuration .....	7-6
7.3	Text-Based Interface: The System Setup Application .....	7-6
7.4	System Management and Monitoring .....	7-7
7.5	System Administration and Configuration Documents .....	7-9
7.6	Reconstructing the /etc/fdmns Directory .....	7-9
7.7	Enabling Realtime Preemption .....	7-10
7.8	Enabling Unattended Reboots on Multiprocessor Systems ....	7-10
7.9	Enabling Automatic Reboot on Single Systems .....	7-11

## 8 Using Online Documentation

8.1	Supported Documentation Formats and Online Viewers .....	8-1
8.2	Mounting the Documentation CD-ROM .....	8-2
8.3	Viewing Online Documents with Netscape .....	8-2
8.4	Netscape Application Integration .....	8-3
8.4.1	Mosaic-to-Netscape Bookmark Conversion .....	8-4
8.5	Installing Acrobat Reader .....	8-4
8.6	Viewing Online Documents with Acrobat Reader .....	8-5
8.7	Copying Online Documentation to Disk .....	8-6

## 9 Software Management

9.1	Software Management Overview .....	9-1
9.2	Software Management from the SysMan Menu .....	9-2
9.3	Using the setld Utility .....	9-4
9.4	Listing Installed Software .....	9-5
9.5	Listing Files Contained in a Subset .....	9-5
9.6	Deleting Software Subsets from a Single System .....	9-6
9.7	Deleting Software Subsets from a Cluster .....	9-6
9.8	Installing Software Subsets on a Single System .....	9-7
9.9	Installing Optional Software Subsets on a Cluster .....	9-11
9.10	Recovering from Subset Load or Delete Failures on a Cluster Member .....	9-12
9.11	Rebuilding the Kernel After Installing Kernel Build Environment Subsets .....	9-13

## A Device Naming Conventions

A.1	History of Device Naming .....	A-1
A.2	Creating Device Special Files .....	A-2
A.3	How Device Names Are Assigned .....	A-3
A.4	Preserving Device Names During a Full Installation .....	A-4
A.5	Update Installation Device Names .....	A-5
A.6	Obtaining More Device Information .....	A-6

## B Compact Disc Overview

B.1	CD-ROM Device Names .....	B-1
B.1.1	Determining the CD-ROM Device Name .....	B-1
B.1.2	Determining the CD-ROM Console Device Name .....	B-2
B.2	Mounting a CD-ROM .....	B-2
B.3	Unmounting a CD-ROM .....	B-3

## C Software Subset Descriptions

C.1	Base Operating System Software Subset Descriptions .....	C-1
C.2	Mandatory Software Subsets .....	C-2
C.3	Optional Software Subsets .....	C-4
C.3.1	General Applications Software Subsets .....	C-5
C.3.2	Kernel Build Environment Software Subsets .....	C-7
C.3.3	Kernel Software Development Software Subsets .....	C-7
C.3.4	Mail Applications .....	C-8
C.3.5	Network-Server/Communications Software Subsets .....	C-8

C.3.6	Printing Environment Software Subsets .....	C-9
C.3.7	Obsolete Components Software Subsets .....	C-10
C.3.8	Reference Pages Software Subsets .....	C-10
C.3.9	Software Development Software Subsets .....	C-11
C.3.10	Supplemental Documentation Software Subset .....	C-13
C.3.11	System Administration Software Subsets .....	C-13
C.3.12	Text-Processing Software Subsets .....	C-16
C.3.13	Windowing Environment Software Subsets .....	C-16
C.3.14	Windows Applications Software Subsets .....	C-19
C.4	Worldwide Language Support (WLS) Subsets .....	C-20
C.4.1	Worldwide Language Support Base Subsets .....	C-21
C.4.1.1	WLS Base Subsets with No United States English Equivalent .....	C-22
C.4.2	Language-Specific Subsets .....	C-26
C.4.2.1	Additional Subsets Provided for Asian Languages Other Than Chinese .....	C-32
C.4.2.2	Additional Subsets Provided for Japanese .....	C-32
C.4.2.3	Additional Subsets Provided for Thai .....	C-34
C.4.2.4	Subsets Provided for Chinese .....	C-34

## D Installing Associated Products

D.1	General Installation Information .....	D-1
D.1.1	Installing Associated Products from the CD-ROM .....	D-1
D.1.2	Installing Associated Products from a Remote Server .....	D-2
D.1.3	Updating the whatis Database After Installing Reference Pages for Associated Products .....	D-3
D.2	Installing Netscape FastTrack Server .....	D-3

## E Update Installation Processing on Existing Files

E.1	Overview of File Preservation During an Update Installation .....	E-1
E.2	Protected System Files .....	E-1
E.2.1	The .new. Files .....	E-2
E.2.2	The .proto. Files .....	E-2
E.2.3	The .PreMRG Files .....	E-3
E.2.4	The .mrg. Files .....	E-3
E.2.5	The Configured File .....	E-3
E.3	Merging Protected System Files .....	E-3
E.3.1	Successful Merge .....	E-3
E.3.2	Unsuccessful Merge .....	E-4



## **F Installation Log Files**

F.1	The Message of the Day File .....	F-1
F.2	Reviewing Installation Log Files .....	F-2
F.3	Full Installation Files .....	F-2
F.3.1	The install.FS.log File .....	F-2
F.3.2	The install.log File .....	F-2
F.3.3	The it.log File .....	F-2
F.3.4	The setld.log File .....	F-3
F.3.5	The fverify.log File .....	F-3
F.3.6	The install.cdf File .....	F-3
F.4	Update Installation Log Files .....	F-3
F.4.1	The update.log File .....	F-3
F.4.2	The upd_custom_files File .....	F-4
F.4.3	The upd_PreMRG_files File .....	F-4
F.4.4	The upd_mergefail_files File .....	F-4
F.4.5	The upd_obsolete_files File .....	F-4

## **G Error Messages and Troubleshooting**

G.1	Full Installation Error Messages .....	G-1
G.1.1	Disk Label, File System and LSM Configuration Error Messages .....	G-3
G.1.1.1	Fixing LSM Configuration Errors .....	G-3
G.1.1.2	Fixing Multiple hostids Error on Existing LSM Configurations .....	G-5
G.1.1.3	Restarting LSM .....	G-7
G.1.2	Configuration Description File (CDF) Validation Errors ..	G-8
G.1.3	Software Subset Load Errors .....	G-9
G.2	Update Installation Error Messages .....	G-10
G.2.1	Update Installation Startup .....	G-10
G.2.1.1	Update Installations from a CD-ROM .....	G-10
G.2.1.2	Update Installations from Remote Installation Services (RIS) .....	G-11
G.2.2	Analysis Phase Error Messages .....	G-12
G.3	Software Configuration Error Messages .....	G-14

## Glossary

## Index

## Examples

6-1	Textual Interface: Default File System Layout .....	6-32
6-2	Text—Based Interface: Default File System Layout with One Disk .....	6-33
6-3	Identifying Disks in the Textual Interface .....	6-33
6-4	Customized Disk Selection Using the Text-Based Interface ...	6-37
6-5	Sample Boot Command Sequence .....	6-45
7-1	The Text-Based System Setup Application .....	7-7
F-1	Sample /etc/motd File Showing Location of Log Files .....	F-1

## Figures

2-1	Update Installation Theory of Operation .....	2-6
3-1	Update Installation Main Window .....	3-8
3-2	Update Installation Preload Analysis Dialog Box .....	3-10
3-3	Software Reinstallation Warning Dialog Box .....	3-11
3-4	Conflicting Software Found Dialog Box .....	3-12
3-5	Locate Product Dialog Box .....	3-13
3-6	Kernel Configuration Dialog Box .....	3-14
3-7	File Type Conflict Dialog Box .....	3-16
3-8	File Type Conflict Warning Dialog Box .....	3-17
3-9	Archive Obsolete Files Dialog Box .....	3-18
3-10	Recover Disk Space Dialog Box .....	3-19
3-11	Remove Subsets Dialog Box .....	3-20
3-12	Ready to Begin Update Dialog Box .....	3-21
6-1	Installation Welcome Dialog Box .....	6-7
6-2	Host Information Dialog Box .....	6-12
6-3	Set Root Password Dialog Box .....	6-19
6-4	Software Selection Dialog Box .....	6-21
6-5	Software Subsets: Edit List Dialog Box .....	6-23
6-6	Kernel Options Dialog Box .....	6-25
6-7	Select File System Layout Dialog Box .....	6-27
6-8	Default File System Layout Dialog Box .....	6-30
6-9	Default File System Layout: Details Dialog Box .....	6-31
6-10	Identify Disk Dialog Box .....	6-32
6-11	Custom File System Layout Dialog Box .....	6-36

6-12	Installation Summary Dialog Box .....	6-42
6-13	Ready to Begin Installation Dialog Box .....	6-43
6-14	Software Installation Dialog Box .....	6-46
7-1	The Tru64 UNIX System Setup Window .....	7-2
7-2	The Quick Setup Application .....	7-4
7-3	The Custom Setup Application .....	7-5
9-1	SysMan Menu: Expanded Software and Installation Branches .....	9-3

## Tables

1-1	Situation Analysis - Which Installation Type Is Best For You?	1-3
2-1	Update Installation Paths .....	2-3
2-2	User-Controlled Features and Options of the Update Installation Process .....	2-4
2-3	Built-In Features of the Update Installation Process .....	2-5
3-1	Update Installation Options on Initial Screen .....	3-9
4-1	Custom Option Selections .....	4-7
5-1	Hardware and Memory Required for a Full Installation .....	5-2
5-2	CD-ROMs Shipped in the Software Distribution Kit .....	5-3
5-3	Documents Shipped in the Software Distribution Kit .....	5-3
5-4	Optional ISA Device Handles .....	5-8
6-1	Processor-Specific Console Variables .....	6-3
6-2	Information You Supply for a Full Installation .....	6-10
6-3	Samples of Correct and Incorrect Host Names .....	6-13
6-4	Mapping of Time Zones to Location/Area Style .....	6-14
6-5	Sample Root Passwords .....	6-20
6-6	Description of Software Selection Options .....	6-21
6-7	Description of Kernel Selection Options .....	6-25
6-8	Recommended Partition Table by Disk Capacity .....	6-28
6-9	LSM Standard Names .....	6-39
9-1	Options for the setld Utility .....	9-4
9-2	Cluster Load and Delete Recovery Options of the setld Utility	9-12
A-1	Old Device Naming Conventions .....	A-1
A-2	Version 5.1 Device Naming Conventions .....	A-2
A-3	Mapping of Old Style and New Style Device Names .....	A-2
A-4	Sample Device Naming Scenario .....	A-3
A-5	Device Name Assignments After Moving and Adding a Device	A-4
C-1	Conditionally Mandatory Software Subsets .....	C-1
C-2	Description of the Mandatory Software Subsets .....	C-3
C-3	Description of the General Applications Software Subsets .....	C-5

C-4	Description of the Kernel Build Environment Software Subsets .....	C-7
C-5	Description of the Kernel Software Development Software Subsets .....	C-8
C-6	Description of the Mail Applications Software Subsets .....	C-8
C-7	Description of the Network-Server/Communications Software Subsets .....	C-9
C-8	Description of the Printing Environment Software Subsets ...	C-10
C-9	Description of the Obsolete Components Software Subsets ....	C-10
C-10	Description of the Reference Pages Software Subsets .....	C-10
C-11	Description of the Software Development Software Subsets ...	C-11
C-12	Description of the Supplemental Documentation Software Subsets .....	C-13
C-13	Description of the System Administration Software Subsets ..	C-14
C-14	Description of the Text Processing Software Subsets .....	C-16
C-15	Description of the Windowing Environment Software Subsets	C-16
C-16	Description of the Windows Applications Software Subsets ...	C-19
C-17	Supported Countries and Languages .....	C-21
C-18	Worldwide Language Support (WLS) Base Subsets .....	C-22
C-19	Font Subsets and the Language Association .....	C-24
C-20	Mail Application Subsets .....	C-27
C-21	Software Development Subsets .....	C-27
C-22	System Administration Subset .....	C-28
C-23	Windowing Environment Subsets .....	C-29
C-24	Windowing Applications Subsets .....	C-30
C-25	Miscellaneous Subsets .....	C-31
C-26	Additional Asian-Language Subsets .....	C-32
C-27	Chinese Language Subsets with US English Equivalents .....	C-35
E-1	Protected System File: /etc/hosts .....	E-2
E-2	Files Left on the System After Successful Merge: /etc/hosts File .....	E-4
E-3	Files Left on the System After a Failed Merge: /etc/hosts File	E-4
G-1	LSM Display Commands .....	G-4
G-2	LSM Remove Commands .....	G-4

---

## About This Manual

This manual describes how to install the Tru64 UNIX Version 5.1 operating system on all supported systems. Topics include preparing your system for an installation, booting the system from the distribution media, and performing the Full and Update Installation procedures.

Installation information is located in two manuals:

- This manual documents the Full Installation and Update Installation procedures and is designed to get most systems from zero to installed and operational quickly.
- The *Installation Guide -- Advanced Topics* documents advanced installation topics such as Installation Cloning, Configuration Cloning, invoking user supplied files to customize the installation process, and disk space planning guidelines.

*Section 1.7, Using This Manual*, provides a navigational path to help you find the information that is relevant to the type of installation you want to perform.

### Audience

The *Installation Guide* is intended for anyone who is installing or updating the operating system software or the Worldwide Language Support (WLS) software.

### New and Changed Features

The following changes have been made since the last release of the operating system:

- Your system must have a minimum of 64 MB of memory to install and run this version of the operating system.
- If you plan to install all file systems and swap space on a single disk, the disk must be 1 GB or larger.
- The recommended partition table for the default file system layout on a single disk Full Installation has been modified and depends upon the disk capacity. The recommended partition sizes have been doubled for 2 GB disks and tripled for 3 GB and larger disks. See *Table 6–8* for the new recommended partition tables depending on disk capacity.

- The following changes have been made to the Update Installation process:
  - Your system must be running Version 4.0G or Version 5.0A of the operating system in order to update to Version 5.1. *Table 2-1* shows the successive update paths to reach Version 5.1 if your system is running a version of the operating system other than Version 4.0G or Version 5.0A.
  - Rolling upgrades of clusters from Version 5.0A to Version 5.1 is supported. Although the rolling upgrade process is documented in the TruCluster Server *Software Installation* manual, an overview is provided in *Section 2.2* because a step in the rolling upgrade process is to perform an Update Installation on the lead cluster member.

Previous versions of this manual are available on the World Wide Web at the following location:

[http://www.tru64unix.compaq.com/faqs/publications/pub\\_page/pubs\\_page.html](http://www.tru64unix.compaq.com/faqs/publications/pub_page/pubs_page.html)

See the New and Changed features section of those versions to see the evolution of this manual.

## Organization

This manual is organized as follows:

<i>Chapter 1</i>	Provides an overview of the operating system features and a summary of the Full, Update, and Cloned Installation processes. Use this information to decide which type of installation is best suited for you.
<i>Chapter 2</i>	Provides an introduction to the Update Installation process.
<i>Chapter 3</i>	Describes how to perform an Update Installation.
<i>Chapter 4</i>	Provides an introduction to the Full Installation process.
<i>Chapter 5</i>	Describes the preinstallation tasks you must complete before beginning a Full Installation.
<i>Chapter 6</i>	Describes how to perform a Full Installation of the base operating system and Worldwide Language Support (WLS) software.

<i>Chapter 7</i>	Provides information about how to set up the system for general use after installing the operating system. Pointers to more information are provided.
<i>Chapter 8</i>	Describes how to access, view, and copy to disk the books on the Documentation CD-ROM.
<i>Chapter 9</i>	Describes how to manage software after the initial installation.
<i>Appendix A</i>	Describes device naming conventions.
<i>Appendix B</i>	Describes how to load a CD-ROM into a caddy and a drive, how to mount and unmount a CD-ROM, and how to remove a CD-ROM from a drive and a caddy.
<i>Appendix C</i>	Provides descriptions of the base operating system and WLS software subsets.
<i>Appendix D</i>	Describes how to install an Associated Product to the base operating system.
<i>Appendix E</i>	Describes how the Update Installation process merges user customizations from protected system files into the new versions of the files.
<i>Appendix F</i>	Describes the contents of the log files that are created after a Full or Update Installation.
<i>Appendix G</i>	Lists error messages and provides corrective action for errors that might be encountered during Full and Update Installations.
<i>Glossary</i>	Provides definitions of terms used in this manual.

## Related Documents

### Icons on Tru64 UNIX Printed Books

The printed version of the Tru64 UNIX documentation uses letter icons on the spines of the books to help specific audiences quickly find the books that

meet their needs. (You can order the printed documentation from Compaq.) The following list describes this convention:

- G Books for general users
- S Books for system and network administrators
- P Books for programmers
- D Books for device driver writers
- R Books for reference page users

Some books in the documentation help meet the needs of several audiences. For example, the information in some system books is also used by programmers. Keep this in mind when searching for information on specific topics.

The *Documentation Overview* provides information on all of the books in the Tru64 UNIX documentation set.

The following documents may be useful references when you are installing the operating system and then are configuring the operating system for general use:

- The documentation for your hardware shows how to set up the processor and its additional devices and supplies valuable troubleshooting guidelines.
- Read the relevant sections in the *Release Notes*, especially those that pertain to installations.
- Refer to the *Installation Guide -- Advanced Topics* for information about advanced installation features, such as: using user-supplied files to further customize the installation process, Installation Cloning, Configuration Cloning, installing Worldwide Language Support (WLS) on a running system, and disk space planning.
- Refer to *Sharing Software on a Local Area Network* for information about Remote Installation Services (RIS) and Dataless Management Services (DMS). RIS lets you install software products over a network from a central server. DMS lets you set up an environment where the / and /usr file systems are exported from a central server onto a client system.
- Refer to *System Administration* for information about configuring, administering, and maintaining your system after it has been installed.
- Refer to *AdvFS Administration* for information about administering the Advanced File System (AdvFS).
- Refer to *Network Administration* for information about network configuration and administration.



- Refer to *Software License Management* for information about registering and loading software licenses.

Tru64 UNIX documentation is available on the World Wide Web at the following location:

[http://www.tru64unix.compaq.com/faqs/publications/pub\\_page/pubs\\_page.html](http://www.tru64unix.compaq.com/faqs/publications/pub_page/pubs_page.html)

## Reader's Comments

Compaq welcomes any comments and suggestions you have on this and other Tru64 UNIX manuals.

You can send your comments in the following ways:

- Fax: 603-884-0120 Attn: UBPG Publications, ZKO3-3/Y32
- Internet electronic mail: [readers\\_comment@zk3.dec.com](mailto:readers_comment@zk3.dec.com)

A Reader's Comment form is located on your system in the following location:

```
/usr/doc/readers_comment.txt
```

- Mail:

Compaq Computer Corporation  
UBPG Publications Manager  
ZKO3-3/Y32  
110 Spit Brook Road  
Nashua, NH 03062-2698

A Reader's Comment form is located in the back of each printed manual. The form is postage paid if you mail it in the United States.

Please include the following information along with your comments:

- The full title of the book and the order number. (The order number is printed on the title page of this book and on its back cover.)
- The section numbers and page numbers of the information on which you are commenting.
- The version of Tru64 UNIX that you are using.
- If known, the type of processor that is running the Tru64 UNIX software.

The Tru64 UNIX Publications group cannot respond to system problems or technical support inquiries. Please address technical questions to your local system vendor or to the appropriate Compaq technical support office. Information provided with the software media explains how to send problem reports to Compaq.

## Conventions

<code>%</code>	
<code>\$</code>	A percent sign represents the C shell system prompt. A dollar sign represents the system prompt for the Bourne, Korn, and POSIX shells.
<code>#</code>	A number sign represents the superuser prompt.
<code>% cat</code>	<b>Boldface type in interactive examples indicates typed user input.</b>
<code>&gt;&gt;&gt;</code>	The console mode prompt is three right angle brackets.
<i>file</i>	Italic (slanted) type indicates variable values, placeholders, and function argument names.
<code>cat(1)</code>	A cross-reference to a reference page includes the appropriate section number in parentheses. For example, <code>cat(1)</code> indicates that you can find information on the <code>cat</code> command in Section 1 of the reference pages.
<code>Ctrl/x</code>	This symbol indicates that you hold down the first named key while pressing the key or mouse button that follows the slash. In examples, this key combination is enclosed in a box (for example, <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">Ctrl/C</span> ).

---

# Operating System and Installation Technology Overview

This chapter contains the following information:

- A high level overview of the operating system features
- A situation analysis to help you determine what kind of installation to perform
- A summary of cluster installation procedures
- What to do if software was preinstalled at the factory
- A description of the two types of distribution media: CD-ROM or remote installation services (RIS) server
- A description of the two installation user interfaces: graphical and text-based
- How to use this manual to find the information you need

## 1.1 Overview of the Operating System

The operating system is a multiuser, multitasking, 64-bit advanced kernel architecture based on Carnegie Mellon University's Mach Version 2.5 kernel design with components from Berkeley Software Distribution (BSD) Versions 4.3 and 4.4, UNIX System Laboratories System V Release 4.0, other software sources, and the public domain.

A suite of comprehensive management solutions is built into the operating system, enhancing productivity and efficiency at every level from installing new software and monitoring performance to tuning the system dynamically for maximum availability. This version of the operating system provides more advanced management features, including simplified installations, system configuration and management, faster and easier problem diagnosis, and web-based management.

The operating system incorporates several performance enhancements either developed or extended by Compaq, including the wired memory, virtual memory, and unified buffer cache; cached writes over NFS; IP multicasting, path MTU discovery, and optimized TCP/IP; and quick started shared libraries.

The operating system supports loadable drivers and other kernel subsystems including loadable boot-path support for third-party disks and graphics cards and provides support for dynamic system configuration and dynamic system recognition of disks and tapes.

The Common Desktop Environment (CDE) is the desktop user interface. CDE provides a uniformed graphical user interface - portable across multiple platforms - to facilitate common end-user and system administration tasks. The CDE uniformed graphical interface makes the operating system appear more like a personal computer, a feature that makes it more accessible to the many end-users familiar with those systems.

Tru64 UNIX provides realtime support and symmetrical multiprocessing (SMP), dataless servers and clients, and numerous features intended to assist application programmers in developing applications that use shared libraries, threads, and memory mapped files. It is fully compliant to the Single UNIX Specification, to the X/Open UNIX brand, to POSIX 1003.1B (Realtime) and to POSIX 1003.1C (with DECthreads).

## 1.2 What Kind of Installation Should You Perform?

There are three ways you can install the operating system:

- An **Update Installation** takes a system that is running Version 4.0G or Version 5.0A of the operating system and updates it to Version 5.1. An Update Installation preserves disk partitions, file systems, file customizations, network and print environment, user accounts, user created files, and any other system setup you may have done on the system.
- A **Full Installation** installs a brand new operating system, in this case Version 5.1. A Full Installation creates new file systems and swap space and overwrites existing system and user-created files on the disk partitions where the file systems and swap spaces are to be installed. After the installation, the system must be configured for general use.
- An **Installation Cloning** is a variation of a Full Installation that lets you replicate the installation from a model system that already is installed with Version 5.1 onto one or more systems with the same or similar hardware configuration. Installation Cloning is ideal for environments in which there are many systems of the same type to be installed. Cloning produces identical system installations and eliminates the need to go through the Full Installation tasks at each system.

Use Table 1-1 as a guideline to decide which type of installation to perform.

The primary difference between an Update Installation and a Full Installation is that an Update Installation updates your system to the next version of the operating system with little or no disruption to your existing

system configuration. When you perform a Full Installation, however, you lose all existing configuration data, layered products, and third party software. If user data exists in one of the standard UNIX file systems (for example, in `/usr/users`), that data must be backed up so it can be restored after the Full Installation is complete.

Table 1–1 describes different installation scenarios and lists the installation type that is best suited for the situation.

**Table 1–1: Situation Analysis - Which Installation Type Is Best For You?**

Situation	Installation Type Best Suited for Your Needs	Start Here for Information
Want to install Version 5.1 onto a system currently running Version 4.0G or Version 5.0A but want to retain disk partitions, file system layout, and system configuration	Update	Chapter 2
Want to install Version 5.1 onto a system currently running a version other than Version 4.0G or Version 5.0A but want to retain disk partitions, file system layout, and system configuration	Successive Updates to reach Version 5.1	Chapter 2
Want to install Version 5.1 onto a system currently running Version 4.0G or Version 5.0A but need to change disk partitions sizes, file system layout, file system type, add more software, or add hardware	Full	Chapter 4
Want to install Version 5.1 on a brand new system	Full	Chapter 4
Want to install Version 5.1 on several similar systems	Full on one system, then Cloned	<i>Installation Guide -- Advanced Topics</i> ; then Chapter 5 in this manual
Want to install a cluster	Full on one member	Section 1.3
Want to duplicate the installation from one system to another similar system	Cloned	<i>Installation Guide -- Advanced Topics</i> ; then Chapter 5 in this manual
Want to customize the installation process by running a script or executable	All	<i>Installation Guide -- Advanced Topics</i> ; then Chapter 5 in this manual

**Table 1–1: Situation Analysis - Which Installation Type Is Best For You? (cont.)**

Situation	Installation Type Best Suited for Your Needs	Start Here for Information
Want to install additional optional software to a system already installed with Version 5.1.	setld command	Chapter 9
Want to set up a remote installations server (RIS) to serve Version 5.1 over the network	All	<i>Sharing Software on a Local Area Network</i>
Want to use the network as the distribution media rather than CD-ROM	All	<i>Installation Guide -- Advanced Topics</i> (for network boot instructions); then Chapter 5 in this manual

### 1.3 Installing a Cluster

To install and configure a cluster, you install the operating system on one system that you plan to make a cluster member. You do not install the Tru64 UNIX operating system on each cluster member.

To summarize, the basic steps for installing a cluster are:

1. Read the TruCluster Server *Software Installation* manual first because it provides all the background information you need to know about cluster installations. This manual, the *Installation Guide*, is focused on single system installations.
2. Use the information in the TruCluster Server *Hardware Configuration* manual to configure the storage hardware and firmware.
3. Follow the Full Installation procedures described in Chapter 5 and Chapter 6 to install the operating system on a private or shared disk on the system that will become the first cluster member. Remember to select AdvFS as the file system type.
4. Follow the instructions in Chapter 7 and the TruCluster Server *Software Installation* manual to configure network and time services. Load and configure the applications you plan to use in the cluster.
5. Follow the instructions in the TruCluster Server *Software Installation* manual to load licenses, install the TruCluster Server software subsets, and run cluster specific configuration commands to create the cluster.

## 1.4 What to Do if the Operating System Is Preinstalled

Some brand new systems are preinstalled with the operating system before being shipped from the manufacturing facility. These systems are called factory installed systems (FIS). Typically, a FISed system is installed with all base operating system subsets as well as several associated products.

Included in the shipping carton with the hardware is the *Factory Installed Software Information Sheet*. This information sheet describes the software products that have been preinstalled for you and the disks and disk partitions that were used in the file system layout.

When you power on the system and monitor for the first time, the FIS Startup Procedure begins, and you have two choices:

- If the preinstalled software and file system layout is not what you want, cancel the FIS Startup Procedure and perform a Full Installation where you can choose your own software and file system layout. Refer to Chapter 4 and Chapter 6 for information about the Full Installation process.
- If you decide to keep the preinstalled software and file system layout, you will be asked to supply the following information:
  - A name for the system (Section 6.8)
  - The current local time and date (Section 6.9)
  - The geographic location and area where the system is located (Section 6.10)
  - A superuser password (Section 6.11)

When you supply the system-specific information and the kernel build process is complete, refer to Chapter 7 for information about setting up your system for general use.

## 1.5 Installation Media: CD-ROM or Network Server

There are two types of distribution media you can use to install the operating system:

- The Version 5.1 *Operating System Volume 1* CD-ROM contains the operating system software subsets that are described in Appendix C. CD-ROM is the most commonly used installation media, and the boot instructions in this manual are targeted to CD-ROM installers.
- Over a network connection to a **Remote Installation Services (RIS)** server that is serving Version 5.1 of the operating system. Although the installation procedures are documented in this manual, the network boot commands are described in the *Installation Guide -- Advanced Topics* because the network is less commonly used.

Choosing which distribution media to use for the installation depends on the following:

- If you have a copy of the Version 5.1 operating system CD-ROM in your possession and your system has a CD-ROM drive, you can perform the installation from CD-ROM.
- If your site has a RIS server that is serving Version 5.1 of the operating system, ask the RIS server administrator if you should perform a RIS installation. The RIS server administrator performs the tasks necessary to register your system as a client of the RIS server.

If you are the RIS server administrator and want to enable installations over the network, follow the instructions in *Sharing Software on a Local Area Network* to set up a RIS server and register client systems.

## 1.6 Installation User Interfaces: Graphical and Text-Based

Full and Update Installations have a graphical user interface and a text-based, menu-driven user interface. You have the option to view the user interface in one of three languages: United States English, Chinese, or Japanese.

The type of user interface presented during a Full or Update Installation is determined based on the hardware configuration. Systems equipped with graphics consoles present a graphical interface to the installation. Systems with consoles that do not have graphics capabilities present a text-based interface.

Both interfaces are task oriented in design, which means that each user decision is presented to you one at a time. You can go back and change your entries at any time.

Both installation interfaces have an online help system. The online help for the graphical interface was modeled after the CDE online help system and provides enough information for you to make intelligent decisions. Online help is available in the text-based interface by entering `help` at any prompt.

## 1.7 Using This Manual

After you have decided which type of installation to perform, follow these suggested paths to the information you may need:

### **Update Installation:**

*Read:* Chapter 2 ⇒ Chapter 3

*Suggested reading:* Appendix A, Appendix E, and Appendix F



**Full Installation:**

*Read:* Chapter 4 ⇒ Chapter 5 ⇒ Chapter 6 ⇒ Chapter 7

*Suggested reading:* Chapter 8, Appendix A, and Appendix F

**Installation Cloning:**

*Read:* The *Installation Cloning* chapter in the *Installation Guide -- Advanced Topics* ⇒ then Chapter 6 in this manual

*Suggested reading:* Appendix F



---

## Update Installation Overview

This chapter includes the following information:

- A description of how the operating system is updated from the current version to the new version
- Updating a cluster to the next version of the operating system
- Supported update paths if your system is running a version of the operating system other than Version 4.0G or Version 5.0A
- A summary of the Update Installation features that you control and the features that already are built into the process
- The theory of operation behind an Update Installation

If you are not interested in reading about the features or the theory of operation behind an Update Installation; go directly to Chapter 3, which gives step-by-step instructions for performing the Update Installation.

### 2.1 Description of an Update Installation

An Update Installation updates the operating system from Version 4.0G or Version 5.0A to Version 5.1. An Update Installation preserves disk partitions, file systems, file customizations, the network, print, and mail environments, user accounts, user created files, and any other system setup you may have done. For details about the affects an Update Installation has on existing files, see Appendix E.

If software patches have been applied to your current operating system, it is not necessary to remove the patches before you begin the Update Installation process. The Update Installation process is designed to detect patches and recommends that you install the latest patch kit for the new version of the operating system when the Update Installation is complete.

The software subsets that comprise the operating system are known as **base software subsets**. During an Update Installation, the base software subsets, Worldwide Language Support (WLS) software subsets, and TruCluster Server Software Support (TCR) software subsets that already are installed on the current version of the operating system are updated to Version 5.1. In addition, any mandatory base, WLS, and TCR software subsets that are introduced in Version 5.1 are installed automatically.

You cannot install additional optional software subsets during an Update Installation. Additional optional software subsets can be installed by using the `setld` command when the Update Installation is complete. Refer to Chapter 9 for more information about using the `setld` command to install base operating system software, and refer to the *Installation Guide -- Advanced Topics* for information about installing WLS software.

Layered products are not updated by the Update Installation process. To update layered products, it may be necessary to delete the existing version and reinstall the new version that is designed to operate with Version 5.1. The Update Installation process notifies you accordingly.

Do not perform an Update Installation if you want to change the type, location, or size of file systems or if you want to install additional optional software because those features are not offered during an Update Installation.

## 2.2 Cluster Rolling Upgrades

An Update Installation is one of several stages in a cluster rolling upgrade. A rolling upgrade of a cluster is performed while the cluster is in operation. One member at a time is rolled and returned to operation while the cluster transparently maintains a mixed-version environment for the base operating system, cluster, and Worldwide Language Support (WLS) software. Clients accessing services are not aware that a rolling upgrade is in progress. A cluster currently installed with and running Version 5.0A can be rolled to Version 5.1.

The cluster rolling upgrade procedure is documented in the TruCluster Server *Software Installation* manual, which you received as part of the TruCluster Server documentation kit. After running several cluster-specific commands to prepare the cluster for the software upgrade, at some point in the process you are referred back to Chapter 3 of this manual to perform one Update Installation on the lead member of the cluster. The lead member is the cluster member that you choose to roll first.

Refer to the TruCluster Server *Software Installation* manual for step by step instructions for performing a cluster rolling upgrade.

## 2.3 What Versions of the Operating System Can Be Updated to Version 5.1?

The Update Installation process updates your operating system from Version 4.0G or Version 5.0A to Version 5.1.

If your system is installed with a version other than Version 4.0G or Version 5.0A, you must perform successive updates to reach Version 5.1. The

only other option to performing successive updates is to perform a Full Installation. Table 2–1 shows the successive update paths to reach Version 5.1. The `installupdate` command invokes the Update Installation process. Certain update paths require the use of the `setld -l` command.

To update a system from the current release to the next release in the update path, you must have the distribution media associated with the version you want to update to.

**Table 2–1: Update Installation Paths**

Current Installed Operating System Version and Revision Level	Can Be Updated to This Version of the Operating System
Version 3.2, 3.2A, or 3.2B	Version 3.2C
Version 3.2C (Rev. 214) , 3.2D-1, or 3.2D-2	Version 4.0
Version 3.2E-1, 3.2E-2, or 3.2F	Version 3.2G <sup>a</sup>
Version 3.2G (Rev. 62)	Version 4.0A
Version 4.0 (Rev. 386) or 4.0A (Rev. 464)	Version 4.0B
Version 4.0B (Rev. 564) or 4.0C (Rev. 564.32)	Version 4.0D
Version 4.0E (Rev. 1089)	Version 4.0F
Version 4.0D (Rev. 878) or 4.0F (Rev. 1229)	Version 5.0
Version 4.0F (Rev. 1229) or 5.0 (Rev. 910)	Version 5.0A
Version 4.0G (Rev. 1530) or 5.0A (Rev. 1094)	Version 5.1

<sup>a</sup> Use the `setld -l` command to update to Version 3.2G because it is a hardware only release; the operating system itself was not revised.

If you do not have the version of the operating system distribution media you need, contact your support representative.

### 2.3.1 How to Determine the Version Number and Revision Level of the Operating System

To determine the operating system version number and revision level currently installed on your system, enter the following command:

```
# sizer -v
Compaq Tru64 UNIX V5.0A (Rev. 1094); Fri Aug 25 10:27:47 EST 2000
```

In the previous command output, 5.0A is the operating system version, and 1094 is the revision level.

## 2.4 Update Installation Features

An Update Installation can be invoked in either a graphical or text-based interface. When you invoke the Update Installation and your system has

graphics capabilities, a graphical interface is presented. If your system does not have graphics capabilities, the text-based interface is presented. If your system has graphics capabilities, but you want to use the text-based interface, you can force the text-based interface by using the `-nogui` flag. However, the reverse is not true. See Section 3.3 for instructions about forcing the text-based interface.

The Update Installation features are classified into two types: the features you control and the features that are built into the Update Installation process:

- Table 2–2 lists the features and options that you control when you begin an Update Installation.
- Table 2–3 lists the features that are built into the Update Installation process.

Table 2–2 shows the Update Installation features that you can turn on or off.

**Table 2–2: User-Controlled Features and Options of the Update Installation Process**

User Option	Description	Detailed Information Located in
Unattended Update Installation	If you do not need to select optional kernel components or archive obsolete files, you can invoke the Update Installation with the <code>-u</code> flag to run the Update Installation without any user intervention.	Section 3.3
Kernel Component Options	You have the option to interactively select optional kernel components.	Section 3.5.3
Archive Obsolete Files	You have the option to archive obsolete files before they automatically are removed by the Update Installation.	Section 3.5.6

Table 2–3 describes the features that are built into the Update Installation process.

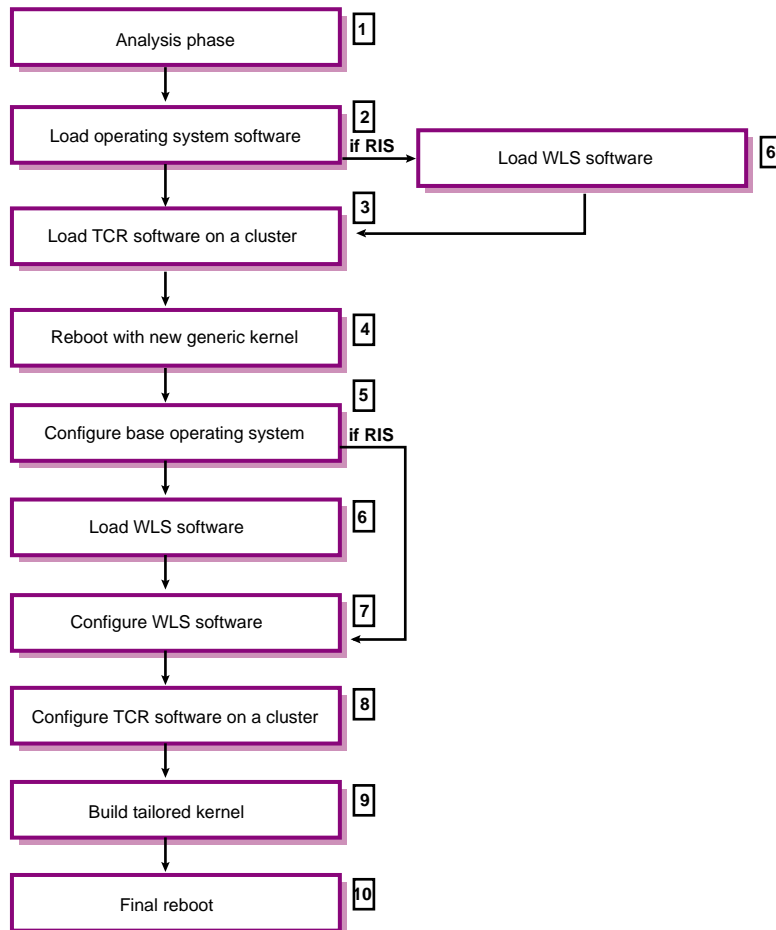
**Table 2–3: Built-In Features of the Update Installation Process**

Built-In Feature	Description	Detailed Information Located in
Notification of conflicting layered products	Notifies you when an installed layered product may not be compatible with the new version of the operating system; this layered product may need to be reinstalled later.	Section 3.5.1
Removes layered products that prevent the Update Installation from continuing	Upon your confirmation, removes layered products that prevent the Update Installation from continuing.	Section 3.5.1.2
Updates base operating system, TCR, and WLS software to new version	Updates existing installed subsets and installs new mandatory subsets introduced in the new version of the operating system.	Section 3.5.2
Checks for changed file types	Checks for file types that have been changed. The Update Installation might not be able to proceed if certain conflicts are found.	Section 3.5.5
Disk space recovery	Provides the option to remove unnecessary software subsets and .PreUPD, core and extra kernel files to recover disk space if there is not enough file space to complete the Update Installation.	Section 3.5.7
Executes instructions provided in user-supplied files	You can customize an Update Installation by creating and moving user-supplied scripts, programs, or executables to the right location. The files are executed if the Update Installation process finds properly named files that have been placed in predefined, supported locations.	<i>Installation Guide -- Advanced Topics</i>

## 2.5 Theory of Operation

Figure 2–1 shows the operational flow of an Update Installation.

**Figure 2-1: Update Installation Theory of Operation**



**1** During the analysis phase the Update Installation analyzes the system for the following items:

- Conflicting layered products
- Installed software
- Conflicting file types
- Obsolete files
- Disk space required for new software and update processing

During the analysis phase, there may be a situation where one or more actions may be taken to correct the situation. You make the decision as to which action is correct. If the Update Installation process discovers any problems during the analysis phase, you can correct them or exit the Update Installation without making any changes to the current system.



An Update Installation changes the following in real time:

- Removal of blocking layered products
- Changes in disk space caused by user actions
- Archiving and removal of obsolete files

For example, if conflicting software is detected and you choose to remove that software, when the analysis step is complete, the conflicting software has been removed, and it is no longer available in the current system even if the Update Installation is canceled.

- 2 An Update Installation installs the new version of the operating system software subsets that match the operating system software subsets previously installed on your system. Additionally, all new mandatory software subsets that were introduced in the new version of the operating system are installed automatically. Optional software subsets are loaded only if they were installed previously. When all software subsets are installed successfully and verified, customized protected system files (files with a `.new.` prefix) from the previous version of the operating system are merged automatically with the files provided by the new version of the operating system.
- 3 If you are performing a cluster rolling upgrade, the TruCluster Server (TCR) software is read here. There is no need to have the TCR CD-ROM available at this time nor have the software in a RIS area. When you followed the rolling upgrade instructions documented in the TruCluster Server *Software Installation* manual, the `clu_upgrade -preinstall` command copied the TCR kit to the `/var/adm/update/TruClusterKit` area on the lead member so that it is available to the Update Installation process.
- 4 The system reboots using a copy of the generic kernel (`/genvmunix`) that is shipped with the new version of the operating system.
- 5 The new version of the operating system that was loaded in Step 4 is configured.
- 6 If the previous version of the operating system was installed with WLS software, the new versions of WLS subsets are loaded here.
- 7 If new versions of the WLS software subsets were loaded, they are configured here.
- 8 If new versions of the TCR software subsets were loaded, they are configured here.
- 9 A machine-specific kernel is built at this time. If you selected optional kernel components during the Analysis Phase, they are also built into this kernel.

- 10 The system reboots with the newly-built tailored kernel. The Update Installation is complete, and you can log in to the updated system.

## 2.6 Completion Time

Update Installations typically complete in 45 to 120 minutes. Actual time depends on your processor type, the number of software subsets to be updated, the type of media used to perform the Update Installation (CD-ROM or remote server), the speed of your CD-ROM drive if you are using CD-ROM, and the volume of network traffic if you are using a remote server.

---

## Update Installation Procedure

The information in this chapter assumes that you are updating the operating system on a single system from the CD-ROM distribution media. To invoke an Update Installation from a RIS server, refer to the *Installation Guide -- Advanced Topics* for instructions on using a remote server; then come back to this manual for the remainder of the procedure.

---

### Note

---

If the Update Installation you are about to perform is part of the installation stage of the cluster rolling upgrade process, make sure you have performed the preparation and setup stages of the rolling upgrade as described in the *TruCluster Server Software Installation* manual before performing the Update Installation on the lead cluster member. The *TruCluster Server Software Installation* manual is part of the TruCluster Server documentation kit.

---

### Summary of the Update Installation Procedure:

1. Complete prerequisite tasks to prepare the system for an Update Installation.
2. Shut down the system to single-user mode to begin the Update Installation.
3. Start the Update Installation from CD-ROM.
4. Choose Update Installation options.
5. Monitor the analysis phase of the Update Installation.
6. Confirm the start of the Update Installation process.
7. Log in as the user `root` when the Update Installation is complete.
8. Review installation log files after the Update Installation is complete.
9. Manually merge file customizations if necessary.
10. Optionally run the Update Installation Cleanup utility to remove files left on the system as a result of the Update Installation.

## 3.1 Step 1: Prepare for the Update Installation

Perform the following tasks before you begin an Update Installation:

1. Back up the user data on the current operating system.

It is recommended that you back up user data before beginning an Update Installation. If there are any interruptions when the Update Installation process is loading software subsets, it is unlikely that the Update Installation will complete successfully, which will leave your system in an indeterminate state. Should this happen, you must restore the original version of the operating system before you can attempt another Update Installation. Refer to *System Administration* for information about backing up your current operating system.

2. Read the current version of the *Release Notes*, particularly any information about Update Installations.

It is recommended that you read the *Release Notes* because it may contain changes to software, firmware, or hardware that are not documented in this manual. The *Release Notes* also contain a summary of the enhancements made in the new version of the operating system.

3. Make sure you know the device name of the CD-ROM device that you will use to boot the distribution media to invoke the Update Installation.

If you do not already know the device name, use one of the following methods to determine the CD-ROM device name while the system is still in multiuser mode.

- To determine the device name of a CD-ROM drive on a system that is running Version 4.0G of the operating system, enter the following command:

```
# file /dev/rrz*c | grep -E 'RRD|CD'
/dev/rrz8c:      character special (8/16386) EIDE #1 \
CD-ROM XM- disk #64 (SCSI ID #0) (SCSI LUN #0) offline
```

The result of this command shows that the CD-ROM device name is `/dev/rz8c`.

- To determine the console device name of a CD-ROM drive on a system that is running Version 5.0A of the operating system, enter the following command:

```
$ ls /dev/disk/cdrom*c
/dev/disk/cdrom0c
```

4. If you have AdvFS file systems on your system, perform the following procedure to protect the data on AdvFS file domains. Otherwise, proceed to Step 6.
  - a. Log in as `root` or use the `su` command to gain superuser privileges.
  - b. Use the `shutdown` command to put your system into single-user mode.
  - c. Use the `umount -A` command to unmount all local file systems.
  - d. Run the `verify` utility on each domain (remember to use the `-r` flag if you are checking the root domain). If you find any problems, correct them before continuing. Refer to the `verify(8)` reference page for more information.
  - e. Use the `mount` command to mount all of the verified local file systems.
  - f. Use the `quotacheck` command to fix the quotas on the mounted local file systems. If you have problems running the `quotacheck` command, you may have to edit your `/etc/fstab` file and try again. Refer to the `quotacheck(8)` reference page for more information.

For more information about administering AdvFS file systems, refer to *AdvFS Administration*.

5. If your system currently is installed with Version 5.0A, check the context dependent symbolic links (CDSL) inventory to make sure all links are intact. If your system currently is installed with Version 4.0G, skip this step and proceed to Step 6.

If you have removed or broken a CDSL on a Version 5.0A system, the Update Installation overwrites the old CDSL with the new version, and you will lose customizations that you have made to the contents of the modified CDSL. Enter the following command to validate the CDSL inventory:

```
# /usr/sbin/cdslinvchk
```

Modified, missing, or replaced CDSLs are logged by default in the `/var/adm/cdsl_check_list` file. Refer to *System Administration* for information on how to recreate missing or broken CDSLs. Refer to the `cdslinvchk(8)` reference page for more information about the utility.

6. Update the system firmware.

Firmware updates are located on the *Alpha Systems Firmware CD-ROM* that is included in the Software Distribution Kit you received. Follow this basic procedure to begin a firmware update:

- a. Shut down the system to console mode:

```
# shutdown -h now
```

- b. Determine the console device name of the CD-ROM device:

```
>>> show device
```

Depending upon your system type, a device information table similar to the following is displayed:

dka0.0.0.0.0	DKA0	RZ28	
dkb0.0.0.1.0	DKB0	RZ28	
dkc0.0.0.2.0	DKC0	RZ26	
dkc100.1.0.2.0	DKC100	RZ26	
dkc200.2.0.2.0	DKC200	RZ26	
dkc300.3.0.2.0	DKC300	RZ26	
<b>dke100.1.0.4.0</b>	<b>DKE100</b>	<b>RRD43</b>	←
mka500.0.0.0.0	MKA500	TLZ04	
mke0.0.0.4.0	MKE0	TZ85	
ewa0.0.0.6.0	EWA0		08-00-2B-2C-CE-DE

In the third column to the right, look for the line with the characters RRD or CD-ROM. These characters denote a CD-ROM device. The second column in the table shows the console device name assigned to each device on your system.

In this example, the RRD43 CD-ROM console device name is **DKE100**. You will enter this device name with the `boot` command in the next step.

- c. Insert the firmware CD-ROM into the drive and boot from it:

```
>>> boot cdrom_console_device_name
```

The firmware update utility automatically identifies your system type and model and determines the correct firmware revision required for your system.

- d. Follow the instructions on the screen. There is an automatic display of the `READ-ME-FIRST` file, which describes the firmware changes included in the update.
- e. Power off the processor for at least 10 seconds when the firmware update is complete to initialize the new firmware.

The contents of the firmware CD-ROM are also available at the corporate Internet site through anonymous file transfer protocol (FTP):

<http://ftp.digital.com/pub/Digital/Alpha/firmware/readme.html>

Firmware updates are also available through anonymous file FTP from the [ftp.europe.digital.com](http://ftp.europe.digital.com) worldwide web server.

## 3.2 Step 2: Shut Down the System to Single-User Mode

An Update Installation is performed from single-user mode. You can either log in as `root` or use the `su` command to gain superuser privileges. The following example shows how to become superuser and then shut down the system to single-user mode:

```
# su -  
password:  
# shutdown +10 Please log out--ready to update system
```

In the previous example, `+10` shuts down the system in ten minutes and sends the message `Please log out--ready to update system` to all logged in users.

---

### Caution

---

If your system is at the console mode prompt (`>>>`), you must boot to multiuser mode and then shut down to single-user mode. It is important that you do not boot the system to single-user mode.

---

You will see the following messages when the system is in single-user mode:

```
Halting processes ...  
  
INIT: SINGLE-USER MODE  
#
```

## 3.3 Step 3: Start the Update Installation

Before beginning the Update Installation, be aware that the process takes from 45 to 120 minutes to complete. Actual time depends on your processor type, the speed of your CD-ROM drive, and the number of software subsets to be updated.

1. Mount the local file systems:

```
# /sbin/bcheckrc
```

The `bcheckrc` command invokes the `mount -a` command and mounts all file systems listed in the `/etc/fstab` file, not just the standard UNIX file systems (`/`, `usr`, and `var`). The `bcheckrc` command also runs `fsck` on UNIX file systems (UFS) and starts the Logical Storage Manager (LSM) if necessary. If `fsck` finds a problem with the `/` (root) partition, the system shuts down and reboots to correct the problem.

2. Insert the *Operating System Volume 1* CD-ROM into the drive.

3. Use the `/sbin/installupdate` command with the following syntax to start the Update Installation:

**`/sbin/installupdate`** [-u] [-nogui] { *location* }

The following describes each option:

- The optional `-u` flag runs the Update Installation in unattended mode. Unattended means that barring any problems with the Update Installation, there is no user interaction required. The only exception to this is the switching of CD-ROMs if WLS software is being updated. The `-u` flag builds a kernel with all kernel components and does not provide the chance to archive obsolete files.  
If no file type conflicts are found during the analysis phase, and your system has enough free disk space to complete the Update Installation, your next involvement is to log in to your updated system as described in Section 3.7. Refer to Section 3.11.1 if the Update Installation does not complete successfully.
- The optional `-nogui` flag runs the text-based interface if your system has graphics capability
- The required *location* argument specifies the source of the software. The *location* can be:
  - A local disk or CD-ROM that contains the operating system (for example, `/dev/rz8c` or `/dev/disk/cdrom0c`)

---

**Note**

---

The CD-ROM device name depends upon the version of the operating system from which you are updating.

- Use the old style device names (for example, `/dev/rz8c`) if the system is currently running Version 4.0G of the operating system.
- Use the new style device names (for example, `/dev/disk/cdrom0c`) if the system is currently running Version 5.0A of the operating system.

- 
- A local mount point where the operating system media is already mounted (for example, `/mnt`)
  - The name of the RIS server (appended with a colon) that is serving the current version of the operating system (for example, `server1:`)

The following sample commands can be used to start an Update Installation. Use the command that best suits your situation. The device naming convention from Version 4.0G are used in all examples.



- To start an unattended Update Installation from CD-ROM device `rz8`:  

```
# /sbin/installupdate -u /dev/rz8c
```
- To start the Update Installation from a CD-ROM device that is already mounted on the `/cdrom` mount point:  

```
# /sbin/installupdate /cdrom
```
- To start the Update Installation from CD-ROM using the text-based rather than the graphical interface:  

```
# /sbin/installupdate -nogui /dev/rz8c
```
- To start the Update Installation from a RIS server named `server1`:  

```
# /sbin/installupdate server1:
```

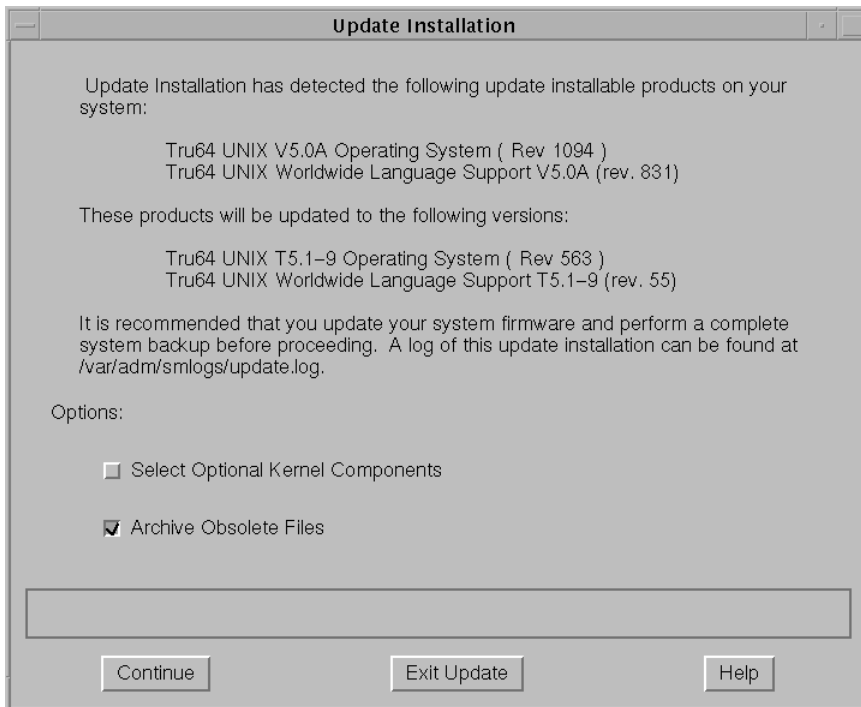
The Update Installation process continues as described in Section 3.4.

### 3.4 Step 4: Choose Update Installation Options

What you see after you start the Update Installation depends upon whether or not your system is capable of graphical displays:

- If your system has graphical display capabilities, the Update Installation dialog box shown in Figure 3-1 is displayed. The graphical interface contains online help, which describes each dialog box and field in the Update Installation process.

**Figure 3–1: Update Installation Main Window**



- **If your system does not have graphical capabilities or you used the `-nogui` flag on the command line, a screen similar to this is displayed:**

```
Update Installation has detected the following update
installable products on your system:
```

```
Tru64 UNIX Operating System ( Rev 910 )
```

```
These products will be updated to the following versions:
```

```
Tru64 UNIX Version 5.1 Operating System (Rev nnn)
```

```
It is recommended that you update your system firmware
and perform a complete system backup before proceeding.
A log of this update installation can be found at
/var/adm/smlogs/update.log.
```

```
Do you want to continue the Update Installation? (y/n) []:
```

```
Do you want to select optional kernel components? (y/n) [n]:
```

```
Do you want to archive obsolete files? (y/n) [n]:
```

Table 3–1 describes the decisions you have to make when you first invoke the Update Installation. You can choose one option, both options, or neither option.

**Table 3–1: Update Installation Options on Initial Screen**

Option	Description
<b>Select Optional Kernel Components</b>	<p>Select this option if your current system is running a customized kernel that has been built with optional kernel components or if you want to customize the new kernel. If you select this option, you will have the opportunity to select which optional kernel components you want to build into the kernel (if any).</p> <p>If you do not select this option, the new kernel will be built with only the mandatory kernel components required to run the installed software.</p>
<b>Archive Obsolete Files</b>	<p>Choose this option to archive obsolete files before they are removed automatically by the Update Installation. Obsolete files are files that were shipped in Version 4.0G or Version 5.0A but are no longer required by Version 5.1. If you select this option, later in the analysis phase of the Update Installation the list of obsolete files is presented, and you can select one or more files to archive and the file name you want to use for the archive. You can delete the archive at a later date.</p> <p>If you do not select this option, you will not have the opportunity to archive obsolete files before they are removed from the system.</p>

---

**Note**

---

The remainder of this chapter applies to the graphical and text-based user interfaces. Rather than showing examples from both interfaces, only the screens from the graphical interface were used to show the update process and user actions. The same steps in the same order occur for the text-based interface.

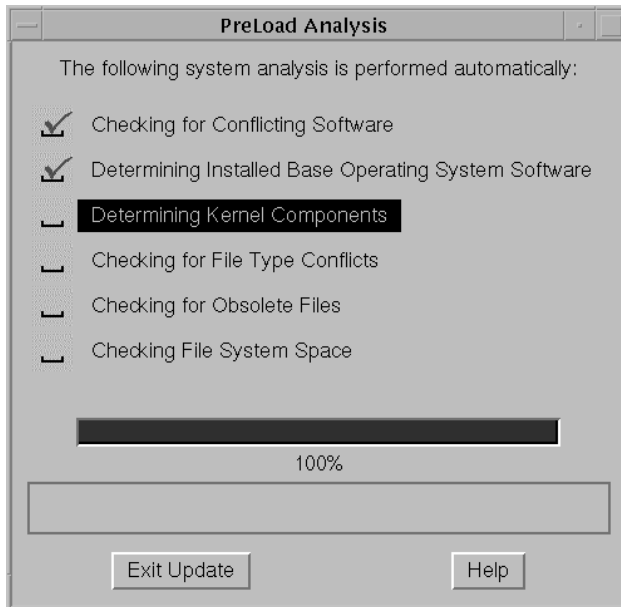
---

### 3.5 Step 5: Monitor the Analysis Phase

After you have selected the Update Installation options, the Update Installation process begins to analyze the current system.

If your system has graphics capabilities, the analysis phase begins with the dialog box shown in Figure 3–2.

**Figure 3–2: Update Installation Preload Analysis Dialog Box**



A check mark indicates when an analysis step is complete. The progress indicator at the bottom of the dialog box applies to the currently highlighted analysis step.

The following sections describe each analysis step in detail and the required user interaction if one or more conditions require your attention:

- Check for conflicting layered software (Section 3.5.1)
- Determine installed software (Section 3.5.2)
- Determine kernel components and optional selection process (Section 3.5.3)
- Check for file type conflicts (Section 3.5.5)
- Check for obsolete files and the opportunity to archive them (Section 3.5.6)
- Check for sufficient file system space (Section 3.5.7)

### **3.5.1 Check for Conflicting Software**

There are two types of layered products that affect the Update Installation: layered software products that allow the Update Installation to proceed but may have to be reinstalled later, and layered software products that must be deleted before the Update Installation can continue.

### 3.5.1.1 Software Reinstallation Warning

The dialog box shown in Figure 3–3 is displayed if the Update Installation detects a layered software product that may require reinstallation after updating to the new version of the operating system. You can choose to exit the Update Installation and manually remove this software or you can continue the Update Installation.

If you decide to continue without removing the layered software product or products, test the software when the Update Installation is finished. It is recommended that you reinstall any layered software products that are critical to the use of the operating system with a version that is compatible with and is supported on the new version of the operating system.

**Figure 3–3: Software Reinstallation Warning Dialog Box**



### 3.5.1.2 Conflicting Software Found: Update Installation Cannot Proceed

The dialog box shown in Figure 3–4 is displayed if the Update Installation detects a conflicting layered software product that halts the Update Installation. You can instruct the Update Installation to delete the product and continue, or you can exit the Update Installation. You cannot update your system to the new version of the operating system until you remove this conflicting software. If you choose to exit the Update Installation at this point, no changes are made to your system. If the conflicting software is not supported under the new version of the operating system, and the software is critical to your system, it is recommended that you do not continue with the Update Installation.

---

**Note**

---

Delete operations take effect immediately. Any software you remove cannot be recovered even if the Update Installation is canceled later.

---

**Figure 3–4: Conflicting Software Found Dialog Box**



### 3.5.2 Determine Installed Software

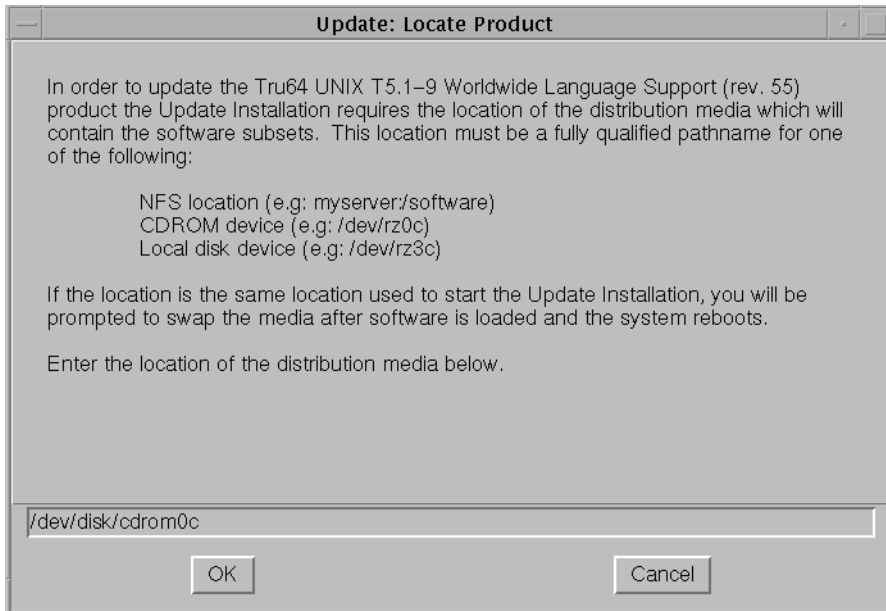
During this part of the analysis, the Update Installation process determines the software that is installed so that it knows what has to be updated.

If you have installed Worldwide Language Support (WLS) software, an additional analysis step, *Determining Installed Worldwide Language Support Software*, is displayed as part of the Preload Analysis dialog box shown in Figure 3–2.

When you are performing the Update Installation from a CD-ROM, and the system has WLS software installed, the dialog box shown in Figure 3–5 is displayed, and you need to identify the source of the Version 5.1 WLS software subsets. As noted, you might need to change media after the system reboots.

For example, when you are installing the operating system from CD-ROM and the WLS software is also on CD-ROM (*Associated Products Volume 1*), enter the location of the CD-ROM drive as shown. The Update Installation knows when to prompt you to insert the WLS media after the system reboots.

**Figure 3–5: Locate Product Dialog Box**



---

**Note**

---

If you are performing this Update Installation on the lead cluster member as part of the rolling upgrade process, there is no need to have the TruCluster Server software in a RIS area or on a CD-ROM because the `clu_upgrade -preinstall` command already copied the kit to the `/var/adm/update/TruClusterKit` area on the lead member so the software is available to the Update Installation process.

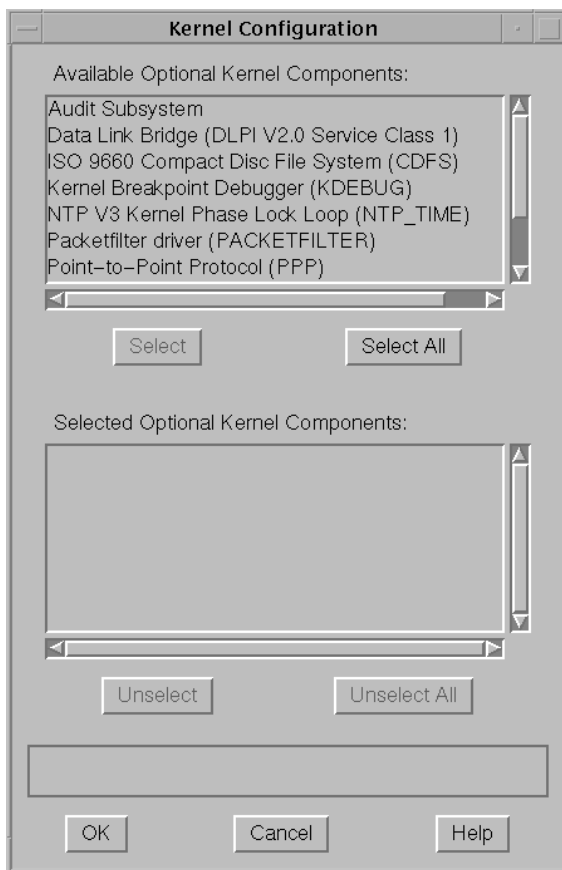
---

### 3.5.3 Select Kernel Components

If you chose the option to include optional kernel components in the kernel (as described in Table 3–1, use the `Kernel Configuration` dialog box shown in Figure 3–6 to select the optional kernel components to build into the kernel. If you had previously built optional kernel components into the kernel, you have to select them again here. The Update Installation process has no knowledge of the contents of the current kernel. To select kernel components, click on the components you want and click on `Select`. After you have made all selections, click on `OK`.

If you cancel kernel component selection at this time, the Update Installation builds a kernel with only the mandatory kernel components that are associated with the installed software subsets.

**Figure 3–6: Kernel Configuration Dialog Box**



### 3.5.4 Manually Adding Special Configuration Options to the Kernel

The Update Installation provides a basic kernel configuration file that includes support for all mandatory kernel components plus any optional components you have just selected. The Update Installation does not propagate any special or custom configuration options that you may have added into the kernel configuration file.

If your kernel configuration file has been edited manually or edited as a result of layered product installations to include nonstandard kernel options, psuedodevices, controllers, or other changes, you will need to include those



options, psuedodevices, controllers, or other changes into your new kernel configuration file (`/sys/conf/host_name`).

If you are using the text-based interface, you will be given the option to edit the kernel configuration file during the Update Installation. Otherwise, you can edit the file after the Update Installation is complete, and then rebuild the kernel using the `doconfig(8)` command.

### 3.5.5 Check for File Type Conflicts

An Update Installation checks for file types that will be incompatible with the updated version of the operating system. Files that are shipped with the operating system, also known as system files, are classified into one of several different file types. A file can be classified as a file, a directory, a hard link, a symbolic link, a block device, or a pipe. The Update Installation procedure expects to find system file types the same as when they were shipped with the previous version of the base operating system. When a file type has changed, it is known as a **file type conflict**.

There are two types of file type conflicts:

- Some file conflicts cause the Update Installation to exit, and you must resolve the conflict before you can continue or restart the Update Installation.
- Other file conflicts are not as serious, and you have the option to continue the Update Installation without resolving the conflict.

This feature is intended to preserve the integrity of the software product about to be installed. In both cases, the Update Installation identifies the conflict and informs you of the action required to resolve the conflict.

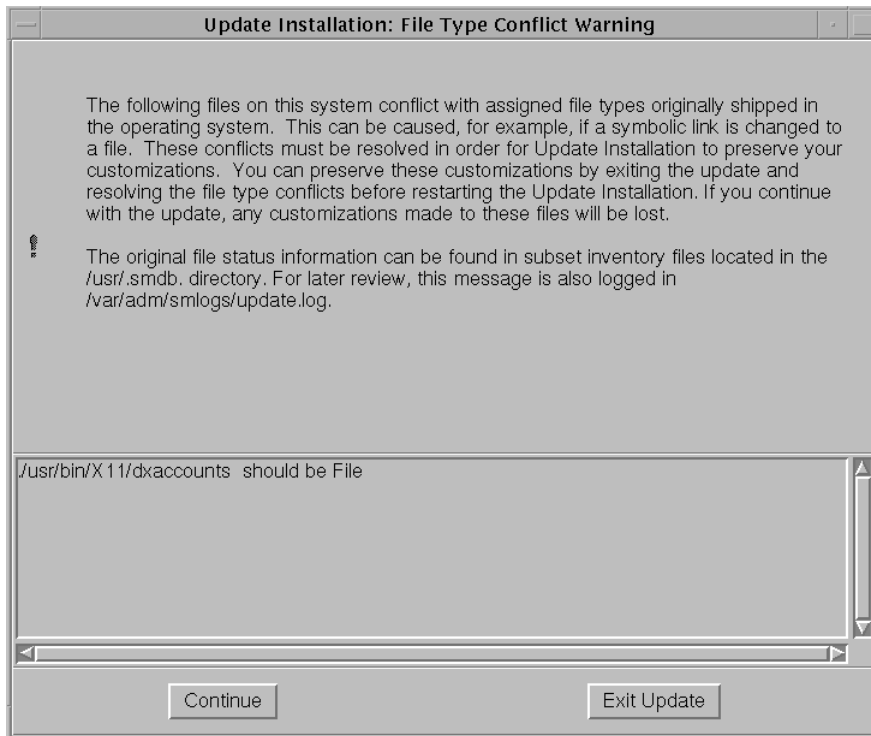
#### 3.5.5.1 File Type Conflicts That Halt the Update

A serious file type conflict may require the Update Installation to exit without updating the system. If the Update Installation were to continue, it would result in a corrupt system. When a conflict of this severity is encountered, you must resolve it manually before restarting the Update Installation. The following types of file type conflicts prevent the Update Installation from continuing:

- Files shipped originally as type `directory` are changed to type `file`.
- Files shipped originally as type `directory` are changed to type `symbolic link`.
- Files shipped originally as type `symbolic link` are changed to type `directory`.

For example, if a file is shipped as a directory in Version 4.0G or Version 5.0A and you later change it to be a symbolic link, when the same file ships as a directory in Version 5.1, the Update Installation detects the difference and the dialog box shown in Figure 3–7 is displayed.

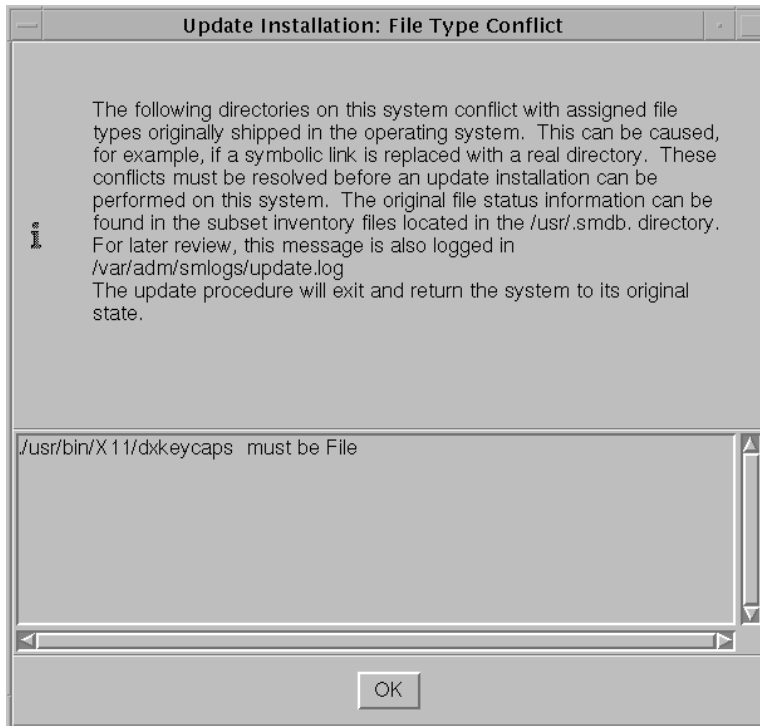
**Figure 3–7: File Type Conflict Dialog Box**



### 3.5.5.2 Less Serious File Type Conflicts

A less serious file type conflict is any file type conflict other than the ones shown in Section 3.5.5.1. The Update Installation automatically resolves these conflicts by saving a copy of the modified file type to a file with a .PreUPD extension, for example /etc/hosts.PreUPD. When the new version of the operating system is loaded, the original file (for example, /etc/hosts) is replaced by the new version that is shipped with the operating system. This means that the file will change type to the file type that is shipped with the new version of the operating system. Any customizations that were in the modified file type must be manually merged from the .PreUPD version into the new version of the file after the Update Installation is complete. Figure 3–8 shows the dialog box that is displayed when a less serious file type conflict is detected.

**Figure 3–8: File Type Conflict Warning Dialog Box**



### 3.5.6 Check for Obsolete Files

Obsolete files are files that were shipped in Version 4.0G or Version 5.0A of the operating system but are no longer part of Version 5.1. The Update Installation automatically searches for and removes obsolete files. If you chose the option to archive obsolete files as described in Table 3–1, you can save obsolete files to a `.tar` file and have the option to compress the `tar` file with the `gzip` utility. The default file name is `/var/adm/update/backup.tar`.

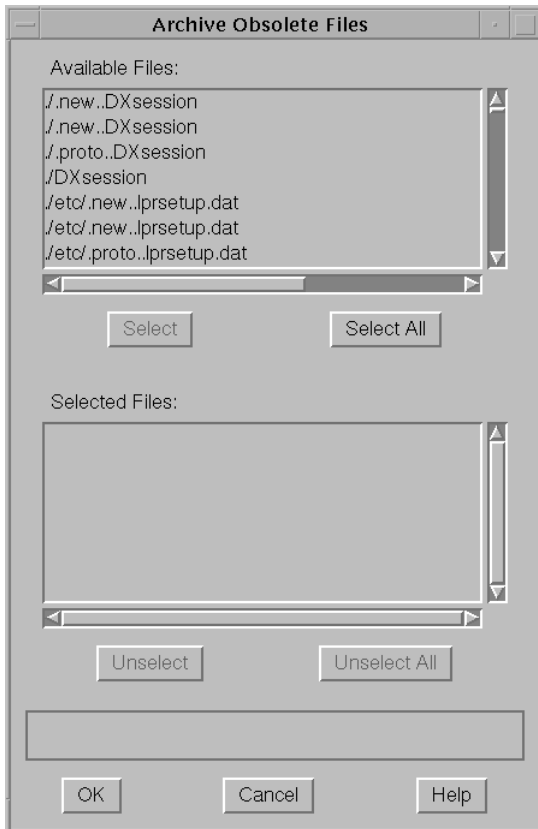
---

**Note**

Whether or not you archive the files, the Update Installation deletes obsolete files after the analysis phase is complete. The dialog box that you use to select and archive obsolete files is shown in Figure 3–9.

---

**Figure 3–9: Archive Obsolete Files Dialog Box**

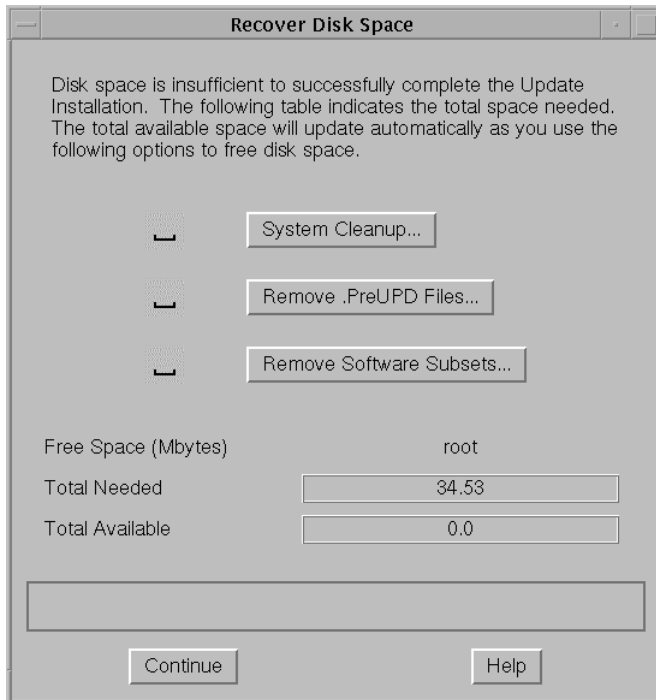


### 3.5.7 Check System File Space

Version 5.1 of the operating system requires more disk space than Version 4.0G or Version 5.0A. The Update Installation performs file system size checks to make sure there is enough space for the new version of the software and that there is enough temporary space for processing.

If the Update Installation determines that there is not enough disk space, disk space status and options for recovering disk space are presented. The dialog box that you use to recover disk space is shown in Figure 3–10.

**Figure 3–10: Recover Disk Space Dialog Box**



It is recommended that you pursue disk space recovery in this order:

1. **Perform system cleanup** by removing `core` files and extra kernel files.

Whenever an application or the system crashes, a crash file named `core` is created. These files tend to be large, and if not removed after each crash, they can occupy a considerable amount of disk space. If you are not in the habit of cleaning up files after system or application crashes, you may be able to recover the disk space from this operation.

The Update Installation procedure looks for extra kernel files (files named `vmunix.*`) in the `/sys/HOST_NAME` and `/var/adm/crash` directories and looks for `core` files in the `/`, `/usr`, and `/var` file systems.

2. **Remove .PreUPD files**

The Update Installation looks for customized system files and protects them by copying them into files with the suffix `.PreUPD`. If removing `core` and extra `vmunix` files do not recover enough disk space, remove the `.PreUPD` files as necessary. Clicking on `Remove .PreUPD Files` displays a dialog box where you can select the files to remove.

---

**Note**

---

If you remove .PreUPD files here, they will be unavailable for reference when you manually merge changes. These .PreUPD files are the only backup copies of unprotected system files that have been modified.

---

### 3. Remove software subsets

If there are software subsets that are not being used, remove them. Software subsets removed at this point will not be updated. Clicking on Remove Software Subsets displays the dialog box shown in Figure 3-11.

---

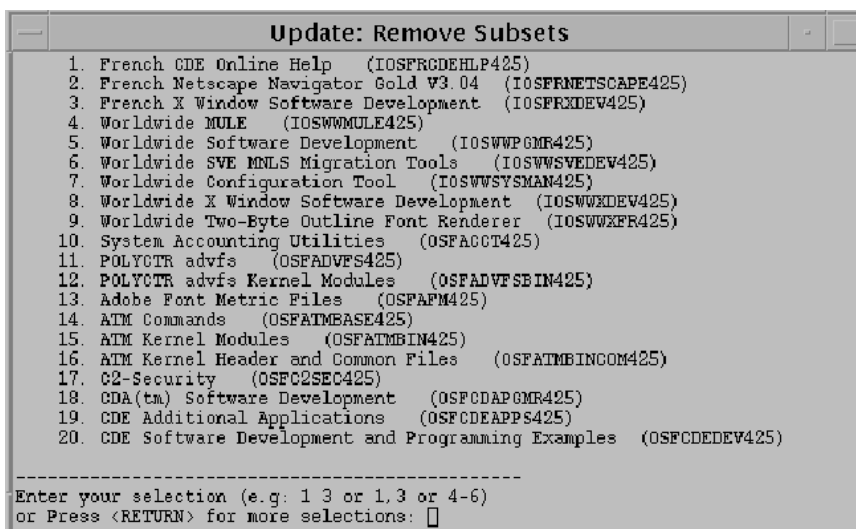
**Note**

---

Deleting individual files that are part of the installed base operating system or WLS software by using a command other than the `setld` command will not produce the additional free space needed because the Update Installation has already taken into account that these old files will be replaced by new versions.

---

**Figure 3-11: Remove Subsets Dialog Box**



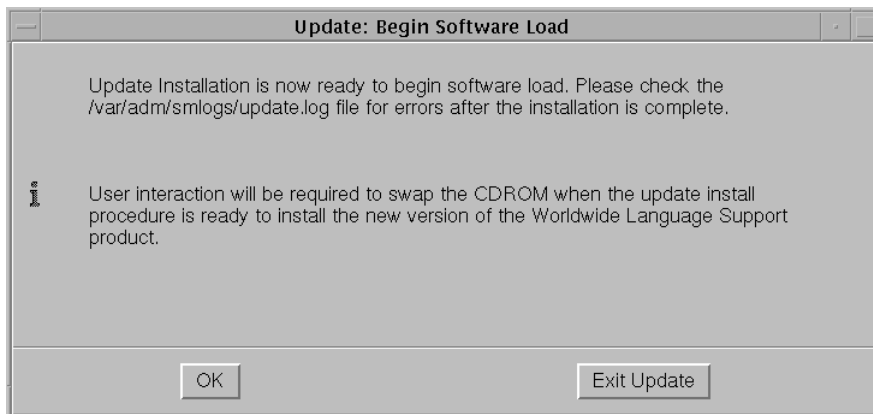
Use the various options until the disk space available in each file system is greater than the disk space needed. If these options do not produce the necessary free space, you may need to change the file system layout or use disk partitions large enough to accommodate the installed software by

performing a Full Installation using the disk partition sizes recommended by the Full Installation procedure.

### 3.6 Step 6: Confirm the Start of the Update Installation Process

When the Analysis Phase is complete, use the dialog box shown in Figure 3–12 to confirm the start of the Update Installation.

Figure 3–12: Ready to Begin Update Dialog Box



You have the following options:

- If you are satisfied with all your selections and choices, click on OK to save your choices and start the update of your system. Once you select OK, system modification begins that cannot be reversed.

---

#### Caution

---

Stopping the Update Installation in any way (including pulling out the power cord or pressing the halt button) while software subsets are loading can cause serious operating system corruption that can render the operating system unusable. You may have to restore the backed-up version of the operating system before you can attempt another Update Installation.

To protect against accidental halting of the Update Installation process, the Ctrl/c key sequence, which is used to stop an operation, is disabled during the software subset load phase.

---

- If you do not want to proceed with the Update Installation at this time, click on Exit Update. When you select Exit Update, your system returns to its preupdate state (except for disk space cleanup tasks you may have performed).

An Update Installation typically completes in 45 to 120 minutes. Actual time depends on your processor type, the number of software subsets to be updated, the type of media used to perform the Update Installation (CD-ROM or remote server), the speed of your CD-ROM drive if you are using CD-ROM, and the volume of network traffic if you are using a remote server.

### 3.7 Step 7: Log in to the System

After the Update Installation is complete, log in to the system as the user `root` to perform the postinstallation tasks shown in Section 3.8 and Section 3.9, which can be done only by the user `root`.

What happens when you log in for the first time depends upon whether you have a graphics workstation or a terminal without graphics capabilities:

- If you have a graphics workstation, a Common Desktop Environment (CDE) login window displays.
- If you do not have a workstation with graphics capabilities, log in as the user `root` at the `login` prompt and enter the `root` password at the `password` prompt.

---

#### Note

---

Starting with Version 5.0 of the operating system, naming conventions for device special file names for disks and tapes are different from previous versions of the operating system. The unit numbers may be reordered as a result of the Update Installation process. If you want to review a mapping of old-to-new device names for your system, review the `/etc/dfs1.dat` file.

For a description of device naming conventions and how the Update Installation process operates with them, see Section A.5.

---

### 3.8 Step 8: Review Update Installation Log Files

Information about the Update Installation is stored in log files for your reference. Installation and configuration data is appended to any log files left over from previous Update Installations. It is recommended that you examine the log files when the update is complete to ensure that there were



no errors during the update and that all files merged successfully. Log files are located in the following locations:

- The Update Installation log is located in the `/var/adm/smlogs/update.log` file.
- Information about the system configuration is located in the `/var/adm/smlogs/it.log` file.
- The list of customized files is located in the `/var/adm/smlogs/upd_custom_files` file.
- The list of failed merges is located in the `/var/adm/smlogs/upd_mergefail_files` file.

Appendix F describes the contents of all logs files that are created as part of an Update Installation. If no customized or failed merge files are detected during the Update Installation, the relevant log files do not contain any data.

### 3.9 Step 9: Manually Merge Customizations if Necessary

An Update Installation may not be able to merge certain customizations automatically and may require that file customizations be added to the new files manually. Manual merging involves editing the new versions of system files with a text editor to include your own customizations. The following information is saved so that you can merge your customizations into the new versions:

- Unprotected system files

When the Update Installation is complete, check for any saved file names in the `/var/adm/smlogs/upd_custom_files` file. Edit the new version of each logged file to include your customizations. Previous versions of each file are saved as `filename.PreUPD`.

- Kernel configuration file

Edit the kernel configuration file at `/sys/conf/HOSTNAME` if you customized this file in the previous version of the operating system. The saved version is located in `/sys/conf/HOSTNAME.bck`. You then will need to rebuild a tailored kernel in order for the newly-made changes to take effect. Refer to the `doconfig(8)` reference page for more information about building tailored kernels.

- Failed merges

If any files failed to merge during the Update Installation, an error message is displayed on your screen. A log of failed merge files is located in the `/var/adm/smlogs/upd_mergefail_files` file. Check the `update.log` file and the `it.log` file to identify any merge errors and manually edit any files that failed to merge and add your customizations.

Your customized, preupdate version of these files is always preserved for your reference with the file naming convention *filename.PreMRG*.

When all manual merges are complete, your system is ready to use. At this time you can install additional optional software subsets provided on the Version 5.1 distribution media. Refer to Chapter 9 for information about installing optional software subsets.

### 3.10 Optional Step 10: Run the Update Installation Cleanup Utility

Use the Update Installation Cleanup utility to remove or archive the *.PreMRG* and *.PreUPD* backup files created by an Update Installation. If there were failed file merges during the Update process, you use these files as a reference to merge your customizations into the new versions of the files. When all manual merges are complete, the *.PreMRG* and *.PreUPD* files are no longer needed.

Running the Update Installation Cleanup utility is an optional step after performing an Update Installation, but it is recommended to use this utility if you want to recover disk space being consumed by these backup files. If you decide to archive the files, the archive destination can be any archive destination supported by the `tar` command (that is file, tape device, or disk).

When you perform a cluster rolling upgrade, you have the option to run the Update Administration Cleanup Utility as part of the clean stage. Do not run the Update Installation Cleanup utility until all cluster members have rolled, and the rolling upgrade is complete. The utility issues a message if you try to run the cleanup utility while a rolling upgrade is still in progress.

The Update Installation Cleanup utility is invoked from the **SysMan Menu** (`/usr/sbin/sysman`) by selecting the following items:

1. **Software** branch
2. **Installation** branch
3. **Cleanup after an OS update (updadmin)** task

The utility is also available from the CDE front panel by selecting *Software Management* from the SysMan Applications icon. Use the online help provided with the graphical user interface if you need more information.

From the command line, the Update Installation Cleanup utility is invoked by entering `/usr/sbin/updadmin`. Refer to the `updadmin(8)` reference page for more information.

## 3.11 Error Recovery

There are certain types of error conditions that cause the Update Installation process to stop and require user intervention. These errors may occur at the following points in the Update:

- Analysis phase
- Subset load
- Kernel build

### 3.11.1 Analysis Phase Failure

You can recover if the Update Installation fails any time during the preload analysis phase. You can bring your system back to multiuser mode by issuing the following command:

```
# init 3
```

Fix the errors reported by the error messages and restart the Update Installation process.

### 3.11.2 Software Subset Load Failure

Individual software subsets can fail to load if a network interrupt, hardware problem, or file verification error occurs during the load process:

- If an optional software subset fails to load, you can install it later by using the `setld` command after the Update Installation is complete.
- If a mandatory software subset fails to load, the Update Installation procedure exits. Your system may be rendered unusable and you may have to restore the backed up version of the operating system before attempting another Update Installation. If the `OSFBASE510` mandatory software subset was installed successfully, you may be able to retry the Update Installation without first restoring the backed up version of the operating system.

### 3.11.3 Kernel Build Failure

The tailored kernel build can fail at the end of the Update Installation because of an incompatibility of a kernel layered product with the new version of the operating system.

In this case, the system will rebuild a kernel without layered product support. Follow this procedure to rebuild a kernel with layered product support:

- Examine the `/var/adm/smlogs/it.log` file, which contains the reasons for the kernel build failure.

- Use the `setld` command to remove the layered product that caused the failure.
- Use the `setld` command to reinstall the most recent version of the layered product.
- Use the `/usr/sbin/doconfig` command to build a new customized kernel with support for the layered product.

---

## Full Installation Overview

This chapter contains an overview of Full Installation features and options, which give you the ability to:

- Dynamically partition disks
- Install the base operating system and Worldwide Language Support (WLS) software at the same time
- Install and configure the Logical Storage Manager (LSM) during a Full Installation
- Identify physical disks by blinking the disk input/output light
- Automatically resolve software dependencies during optional software selection
- Invoke user-supplied files at predefined invocation points to further customize the installation process
- Clone the installation characteristics of one system to other similar systems
- Clone the services configured (network, internet, mail, and print services) on one system to other similar systems
- Access a UNIX shell to perform file system and disk management tasks

If you are not interested in reading about the features of a Full Installation, go directly to Chapter 5, which describes the preinstallation tasks to perform before beginning a Full Installation.

### 4.1 Summary of Full Installation Features

The Full Installation can be invoked with a graphical or text-based interface. The interface presented depends upon the graphics capabilities of your system. The interfaces can be displayed in the United States English, Chinese, or Japanese languages. Both interfaces enable you to quickly and easily complete a Full Installation of the operating system. Both interfaces have a task oriented design, which steps you through each task of the setup process and lets you go backward and forward at any time. Section 6.7 summarizes the information you are required to supply and the decisions you have to make during the Full Installation.

A Full Installation creates new file systems and swap space on the disks and partitions you decide to use for the installation. Existing system and user-created files are overwritten on the disk partitions where the file systems and swap spaces are to be installed. You have the option to use default values for the disk layout and swap space allocation or to completely customize the locations of file systems and swap space.

---

**Note**

---

If your system currently is installed with a version of the operating system and was using the Advanced File System (AdvFS) as a file system type, you must run the `advscan` utility to reconstruct the `/etc/fdms` directory after the Full Installation is complete. Refer to Section 7.6 for more information.

---

### 4.1.1 Dynamic Disk Partitioning

The Full Installation process determines the file system layout based on your software selections. You do not need to calculate in advance the size of the file systems, nor do you need to repartition your disks in advance of the installation process to ensure a successful installation.

Unless you specify otherwise, the Full Installation process defaults to the following file system layout:

- Installs the operating system on a single disk (`dsk0`) with the following layout:
  - The `/` (root) file system is on the `a` partition.
  - The `/usr` file system is on the `g` partition.
  - The `var` area is a directory in the `/usr` file system.
  - If WLS is installed, the `i18n` (internationalization) area is a directory on the `g` partition in the `/usr` file system.
  - A single swap area is on the `b` partition.
- All file systems are the Advanced File System (AdvFS) type.

The size of each disk partition depends on the size of the disk chosen for the installation and the number of subsets you chose to install. The option to customize your disk layout and partitions is always available during a Full Installation.

### 4.1.2 Installing Worldwide Language Support (WLS) Software

Tru64 UNIX is an internationalized operating system. The WLS software subsets provide support for various native languages and countries.

Installing the WLS software subsets lets users work in their native language, and enables software developers to develop internationalized software. WLS software subsets are located on the *Associated Products Volume 1* CD-ROM.

United States English is mandatory and is installed during every Full Installation. You have the option to install support for one or more additional languages. It is recommended to install WLS during a Full Installation to ensure that enough disk space is available. When you select one or more additional countries:

- Mandatory software subsets for every country you select are installed automatically.
- All subsets for every country you select are installed if you install all base operating system subsets.
- All WLS base subsets (that is, those prefixed with `IOSWW`) that correspond to selected base operating system subsets are installed for every country you select.
- Optional subsets for every country you select can be installed with the `winstall` script or the `setld` utility after the Full Installation completes.

WLS software is installed in the `/usr/i18n` (internationalization) directory, which can be a separate file system. By default it is part of the `/usr` file system.

WLS software subsets can be installed after a Full Installation by using the `winstall` command or the `setld -l` command. See the *Installation Guide -- Advanced Topics* for instructions.

### 4.1.3 Configuring the Logical Storage Manager (LSM)

You can install and configure the Logical Storage Manager (LSM) during the Full Installation process. LSM is a software product for host-based disk storage management that provides a powerful set of disk management tools and features for configuring and monitoring disk storage subsystems and for enhancing their availability and performance. These tools give system administrators the flexibility to manage storage space according to the needs of applications, databases, and users, without the limitations of standard UNIX partitions and physical devices. LSM offers the following features:

- Online storage management provides the ability to manage a system's disks as a pool of storage space for creating LSM logical volumes.
- Concatenation (disk spanning) enables the combination of multiple physical disks into a single, larger virtual disk (called a volume) for use by large file systems or databases.

- Striping (RAID 0) improves a system's disk I/O performance by interleaving the data within a volume across several physical disks.
- Mirroring (RAID 1) protects against data loss due to hardware malfunction by creating a mirror (duplicate) image of the data on another disk.
- Root and swap mirroring enables mirroring of critical system disk partitions used for booting and running the system to ensure that no single disk failure leaves the system unusable.
- Dirty region logging tracks regions on a mirrored volume that have changed due to I/O writes. Provides fast resynchronization of a mirrored volume after a system failure.
- Encapsulation enables migration of existing data on disk partitions to LSM volumes.

Some of the advanced LSM features such as mirroring and striping require a separate software license. For more information on the benefits and configuration and management of LSM, see the *Logical Storage Manager* manual.

#### 4.1.4 Disk Identification

To help you associate a disk device name with the physical disk, both installation interfaces provide a way to determine which physical disk has a particular device name by repeatedly blinking the input/output light on the disk. The blinking light can be used to identify the majority of disks. However, due to hardware limitations, not all disks can be identified in this manner.

If you need information about device naming conventions, refer to Appendix A.

#### 4.1.5 Automatic Detection and Installation of Software Dependencies

If you decide to install optional software during a Full Installation, software dependencies automatically are checked. Dependency checking ensures that software required for the proper operation of the optional software also is installed. If such a relationship is detected, the dependent software is installed automatically and you are notified accordingly.

#### 4.1.6 Invoking User-Supplied Files to Perform Customizations

User-supplied files can be invoked during a Full Installation to further customize the system beyond what is possible during a regular Full Installation. User-supplied files can contain scripts, executables, or programs.



The Full Installation process looks for the files at three different process points:

- Before the installation interface is displayed
- After software is installed
- After the system reboots, but before the tailored kernel build and configuration phase

When a user-supplied file is found, it is executed. With these hooks in the installation process, you have the potential to fully automate the Full Installation process, perform customizations on the system and handle special installation situations. If you want to take advantage of this feature, see the *Installation Guide -- Advanced Topics* for file naming conventions, example scripts, and instructions for preparing and moving the files to the right locations so the Full Installation process can find them.

### 4.1.7 Installation Cloning

Installation Cloning lets you duplicate the installation characteristics from a model system onto one or more systems with the same or similar hardware configuration.

When you install the operating system, the Full Installation process automatically generates a configuration description file (CDF) named `install.cdf` that contains installation setup data you specified. The CDF is located in the `/var/adm/smlogs` directory. The `install.cdf` file contains all the installation information required to duplicate the Full Installation on another system.

---

#### Note

---

Installation Cloning is not supported between different releases of the operating system. CDFs created by earlier versions of the operating system are not compatible with the current version.

---

Refer to the *Installation Guide -- Advanced Topics* for information about acceptable differences between hardware configurations and for instructions about preparing and moving the `install.cdf` file to the right location so that it can be invoked during a Full Installation.

### 4.1.8 Configuration Cloning

Configuration Cloning lets you duplicate the network, printer, and mail services (among other configuration items) from an already configured system onto one or more systems. Configuration Cloning is practical when more than one system has to be configured in a similar fashion.

To achieve a fully automated installation and configuration of another system, Configuration Cloning can be combined with Installation Cloning to completely eliminate the need to manually perform configuration tasks after the system is installed.

When a system that is designated to be a model system has been configured the way you want it, you manually use the `sysman -clone -save` command to save a snapshot of the system configuration data in a CDF called `config.cdf`. The CDF is saved by default in the `/var/adm/smlogs` directory.

---

**Note**

---

Configuration Cloning is not supported between different releases of the operating system. Configuration CDFs created from older versions of the operating system are not supported for use on the current and future releases.

---

Refer to the *Installation Guide -- Advanced Topics* for information about creating, editing, and moving the `config.cdf` file to the right location so that it can be invoked during a Full Installation.

### 4.1.9 Access to a UNIX Shell for Experienced Administrators

Both Full Installation interfaces provide access to a UNIX shell in single-user mode with superuser privileges. The UNIX shell provides a way to recover from serious problems such as / (root) file system corruption and enables you to perform general file system and disk maintenance tasks during the installation. It is recommended that only experienced users choose the UNIX shell option.

When you start the Full Installation process using the text-based interface, the UNIX shell is presented as an option from the first menu. Choosing the UNIX shell option exits the installation procedure. Be aware that if you already have navigated through the text-based interface and then invoke the UNIX shell, any selections you have made are lost and you have to start again.

If you are using the graphical interface, you access the UNIX shell from the `File` menu. The graphical installation procedure remains available and you can go back and forth between the Full Installation procedure and the UNIX shell as necessary. Any installation selections you have made up to this point are retained.

The distribution media contains file systems that are laid out just as the software would be installed on the system and contains directly accessible `/`, `/usr`, and `/var` areas. This format makes many commands and utilities

available in the UNIX shell even if your operating system is not yet fully functional. In effect, the mounted distribution media is a functional file system.

---

**Caution**

---

Any changes you make to the system from the UNIX shell affect the live system and the subsequent installation. For instance, if you have already assigned file systems to certain disks and partitions and then use the UNIX shell to edit a disk label, you may adversely affect your choices.

---

Refer to the *Installation Guide -- Advanced Topics* for more information about the various maintenance procedures that can be performed from the UNIX shell environment.

## 4.2 Full Installation: Defaults and User Options

Table 4–1 shows the Full Installation default settings along with the choices you have for each feature.

**Table 4–1: Custom Option Selections**

Installation Item	Choices Offered to the User	Default Settings
Base operating system software subsets	Install mandatory software subsets only, mandatory plus your choice of optional software subsets, or all software subsets.	Install mandatory base operating system software subsets only.
Worldwide Language Support (WLS) subsets	Install support for one or more languages in addition to United States English.	Install support for United States English only.
Disk selection	The <code>/</code> , <code>/usr</code> , and <code>/var</code> file systems and up to two swap areas can be distributed on a single disk or across multiple disks as you choose.	The <code>/</code> and <code>/usr</code> file systems and one swap area are on the same disk; <code>var</code> and <code>i18n</code> (if needed) are directories under <code>/usr<sup>a</sup></code> .
Partition table	Create a custom partition table (for one or more disks)	A recommended partition table for a single disk based on software subset selection and disk size.

**Table 4–1: Custom Option Selections (cont.)**

<b>Installation Item</b>	<b>Choices Offered to the User</b>	<b>Default Settings</b>
File system locations	Create a customized file system layout. Although the / file system is always on the <i>a</i> partition, all other file systems and swap areas can be located on any disk partitions on any disk.	The default file system layout puts the / file system on the <i>a</i> partition; the /usr file system on the <i>g</i> partition, and swap space on the <i>b</i> partition.
File system types	Choose between UFS or AdvFS <sup>b</sup> as the file system type for /, /usr, /var and i18n.	Install one file system type for all file systems. AdvFS <sup>b</sup> is the default file system type. There is no default in the text based interface.
Swap space	Allocate up to two swap areas on any disk or partition.	Allocate one swap area on the <i>b</i> partition.
Logical Storage Manager (LSM)	Install into LSM volumes at the time the system is installed. If LSM is selected, you must choose (and possibly create) a partition for the LSM private region.	The LSM private region is created automatically if you decide to install LSM.
Kernel Component Options	Build mandatory kernel components only, mandatory plus some optional, or all kernel components into the kernel.	Build mandatory kernel components into the kernel.

<sup>a</sup> Only disks 1 GB or larger are supported for single disk installations.

<sup>b</sup> If you are installing a system that will eventually become a member of a cluster, you must use AdvFS as the file system type.

---

## Full Installation Prerequisite Tasks

This chapter describes the preinstallation tasks to be performed before starting a Full Installation.

### Summary of Prerequisite Tasks:

1. Check the hardware to make sure it meets the requirements for a Full Installation.
2. Check the Software Distribution Kit to make sure you have the right CD-ROMs and documents.
3. Read the *Release Notes*, especially the chapters about installations and hardware, for last minute software, firmware, or hardware changes that are not documented in this manual.
4. Optionally switch console types if you are migrating your system from Windows NT for Alpha to Tru64 UNIX
5. Optionally prepare and position CDFs or user-supplied files to invoke during the Full Installation or to clone the installation or configuration from another system.
6. Back up the user data on the operating system as a safety precaution. This step is not required for brand new systems.
7. Shut down or power up the system to the console mode to prepare to update the firmware and then boot the system from the distribution media.
8. Update the firmware to the version that is compatible with the new version of the operating system.
9. Optionally run hardware configuration utilities depending upon the type of hardware you have.
10. Optionally connect peripheral devices if you intend to add new devices to your system.

### 5.1 Task 1: Check Hardware

Ensure that you have the hardware needed for an installation. You must know the location and function of the controls and indicators on your hardware. Verify that all cables and connectors are hooked up and that

the system is plugged in. Refer to your hardware owner's documentation for more information.

Table 5-1 lists the minimum hardware and memory requirements to install the operating system software.

**Table 5-1: Hardware and Memory Required for a Full Installation**

Item	Description
CD-ROM disk drive	Most Full Installations are invoked from CD-ROM. If your system does not have a CD-ROM drive, contact your sites network administrator to determine if your system can be installed from a server using Remote Installation Services (RIS).
Memory	Your system must have at least 64 megabytes (MB) of memory to install and run this version of the operating system. To determine the memory on your system, use the <code>show mem</code> command when the system is in console mode.
A disk with partition a at least 128 MB in size	The / (root) file system always is installed on partition a, and partition a must be at least 128 MB in size. During the installation setup, you have the option to use the default file system layout on a single disk, which automatically creates disk partitions of the right size.
A disk that is 1 gigabyte (GB) or greater in size for single disk installations	If you have to install the operating system onto a single disk because your system is equipped with only one disk, the disk must be 1 GB or greater in size. The <i>Software Product Description</i> provides a list of disks that can support a single-disk installation.
Console terminal	The console terminal communicates with your system during the installation. The console terminal may be a graphics or text only terminal. The type of terminal you have determines the installation interface that is presented.

In addition to these required items, you may want an additional disk or disks for data storage that is separate from the disk on which file systems reside. This arrangement lets you add additional storage space without changing the system disk configuration.

## 5.2 Task 2: Make Sure You Have These Items

You should have received a Software Distribution Kit that contains the CD-ROMs and documents you need to perform a Full Installation. A *Part Listing* information sheet is included in the box and lists the contents of the Software Distribution Kit.

Before beginning any installation, you should have in your possession the items shown in Table 5-2 and Table 5-3. If you are missing any one of the items listed in Table 5-2 or Table 5-3, contact your support representative.

If your system is connected to an EISA bus, you must run the EISA Configuration Utility (ECU) before installing the operating system. The ECU is third-party software that is shipped on diskette. You should have received the ECU diskette with the original receipt of your hardware. If you do not have a current ECU diskette in your possession, contact your support representative or an authorized vendor for a replacement before beginning the installation.

The Software Distribution Kit contains the following CD-ROMs:

**Table 5-2: CD-ROMs Shipped in the Software Distribution Kit**

CD-ROM Title	Contents
<i>Operating System Volume 1</i>	Base operating system software
<i>Associated Products Volume 1</i>	Worldwide Language Support (WLS) software and layered product software
<i>Associated Products Volume 2</i>	Additional layered products
<i>Documentation Volume 1</i>	Documentation set in viewable HTML and PDF format
<i>Alpha Systems Firmware CD-ROM</i>	Firmware revision levels for all systems

The Software Distribution Kit contains the following documents:

**Table 5-3: Documents Shipped in the Software Distribution Kit**

Document Title
<i>READ ME FIRST</i> letter
This manual, the <i>Installation Guide</i>
<i>Installation Guide -- Advanced Topics</i>
<i>Full Installation Quick Reference Card</i>
<i>Update Installation Quick Reference Card</i>
<i>Release Notes</i>
<i>Technical Overview</i>
<i>Alpha AXP Systems Firmware Update Release Notes Overview</i>

### 5.3 Task 3: Read the Release Notes

It is recommended that you read the *Release Notes* before beginning any software installation procedure, particularly the Installation and Hardware

chapters. The *Release Notes* describe important changes to the software, firmware, and hardware that are not covered in standard documentation. This information might be required for a successful installation.

The *Release Notes* also describe new features of the Version 5.1 operating system or features that have changed significantly from previous releases.

A printed version of the *Release Notes* is included in the Software Distribution Kit you received.

## 5.4 Optional Task 4: Migrating Your System from Windows NT for Alpha to Tru64 UNIX

If your system is currently running the Windows NT for Alpha operating system and you want to install the Tru64 UNIX operating system, you have to switch from the Advanced RISC Computing (ARC) console to the System Reference Manual (SRM) console before beginning the installation.

Follow this procedure to prepare your system to migrate from Windows NT for Alpha to Tru64 UNIX:

1. Check your existing hardware configuration against the list of supported hardware in the *Software Product Description*. Obtain replacements for any unsupported boards, device drivers, and disks with those listed in the *Software Product Description*.
2. Make sure you have the latest version of the EISA Configuration Utility (ECU) diskette in your possession.
3. Back up the user data on the current operating system as a safety precaution.
4. Shut down the NT operating system to the console mode.
5. Reconfigure and replace unsupported hardware with supported hardware, if necessary.
6. Insert the ECU diskette into the diskette drive.
7. Follow the instructions on the screen to display the Main Menu from which all setup is done.
8. Select the following menu items from the Main Menu:
  - a. CMOS setup
  - b. Advanced CMOS setup
  - c. Console Selection: Digital UNIX Console (SRM)
9. Press the F10 key to save your selections.



10. Run the EISA Configuration Utility (ECU) (as described in your hardware owner's guide) only if the hardware configuration has changed. If the devices are recognized and supported, then the ECU updates itself.
11. Cycle the system power off and back on.  
The console is now running the SRM console.
12. Update the system firmware as described in Section 5.8.

## 5.5 Optional Task 5: Prepare CDFs or User-Supplied Files

If you want to perform an Installation Cloning or Configuration Cloning on the system you are about to install, read the chapters about Installation and Configuration Cloning in the *Installation Guide -- Advanced Topics*. Prepare a configuration description file (CDF) or files as described in that document and move them to the right locations so the Full Installation process can find them.

If you want to have the Full Installation automatically execute user-supplied scripts, programs, or executables, review the chapter about user-defined files in the *Installation Guide -- Advanced Topics*. Prepare `preinstall`, `postload`, or `postreboot` files as instructed and move them to the right location so the Full Installation process can find them.

## 5.6 Task 6: Back Up the System

If your system already is installed with the operating system, it is recommended that you perform a full backup of the user data on the system before you begin any software installation procedure. Refer to the *System Administration* guide for information about backing up your system.

## 5.7 Task 7: Shut Down or Power Up the Processor

To prepare to update system firmware, do one of the following depending upon the current state of the system:

- If the system is turned off, power on the processor. The console subsystem prints various start up and diagnostic messages and ends with the console mode prompt (`>>>`).
- If your system is up and already running a version of the operating system, shut down and halt the processor using a command similar to the following :

```
# shutdown -h +5 Please log out
```

In the previous example, the system is shut down and halted in 5 minutes and sends the message `Please log out` to all logged in users.

Consult the *System Administration* guide or the `shutdown(8)` reference page if you need more information about shutting down a system.

## 5.8 Task 8: Update Firmware

Firmware is the software stored within the system (for example, ROM or EPROM) on a system's CPU board. Firmware is the first software that runs when a system is turned on, and it directly controls the hardware. Each hardware platform uses a different set of firmware. The firmware on a platform is the same regardless of the operating system installed on the platform. Thus, firmware is platform dependent, but is operating system independent.

Your system might require a firmware update to run the new version of the operating system. Console firmware is backward compatible with respect to hardware and operating system revision. Therefore, to assure that your system has the latest in terms of PAL code, boot device support, and bug fixes, upgrading firmware to the latest revision is recommended. The firmware *Release Notes* for your system model will note any exceptions to this general recommendation.

Firmware updates are located on the *Alpha Systems Firmware CD-ROM* that is included in the Software Distribution Kit you received.

Follow this basic procedure to begin a firmware update:

1. Shut the system down to console mode if you have not already done so:

```
# shutdown -h now
```

2. Determine the console device name of the CD-ROM device:

```
>>> show device
```

Depending upon your system type, a device information table similar to the following is displayed:

dka0.0.0.0.0	DKA0	RZ28	
dkb0.0.0.1.0	DKB0	RZ28	
dkc0.0.0.2.0	DKC0	RZ26	
dkc100.1.0.2.0	DKC100	RZ26	
dkc200.2.0.2.0	DKC200	RZ26	
dkc300.3.0.2.0	DKC300	RZ26	
<b>dke100.1.0.4.0</b>	<b>DKE100</b>	<b>RRD43</b>	←
mka500.0.0.0.0	MKA500	TLZ04	
mke0.0.0.4.0	MKE0	TZ85	
ewa0.0.0.6.0	EWA0	08-00-2B-2C-CE-DE	

In the third column to the right, look for the line with the characters **RRD** or **CD-ROM**. These characters denote a CD-ROM device. The second column in the table shows the console device name assigned to each device on your system.

In this example, the RRD43 CD-ROM console device name is **DKE100**. You will enter this device name with the `boot` command in the next step.

3. Insert the firmware CD-ROM into the drive and boot from it:

```
>>> boot cdrom_console_device_name
```

The firmware update utility automatically identifies your system type and model and determines the correct firmware revision required for your system.

4. Follow the instructions on the screen. There is an automatic display of the `READ-ME-FIRST` file, which describes the firmware changes included in the update.
5. Power off the processor for at least 10 seconds when the firmware update is complete to initialize the new firmware. Then, power on the processor.

The contents of the firmware CD-ROM are also available at the corporate Internet site through anonymous file transfer protocol (FTP):

```
ftp://ftp.digital.com/pub/Digital/Alpha/firmware
```

Firmware updates are also available through anonymous FTP from the `ftp.europe.digital.com` worldwide web server.

## 5.9 Optional Task 9: Configure Hardware

This section describes optional preinstallation tasks you may have to perform depending upon the type of hardware you have. In all cases, check your hardware documentation for more information.

The following hardware-dependent tasks are described in this section:

- Configuring the network adapter to match the network environment at your site
- Configuring Integrated System Architecture (ISA) Devices
- Installing ATM adapters before the Full Installation
- Configuring the RAID subsystem
- Running the EISA Configuration Utility (ECU)

### 5.9.1 Setting the Network Adapter Mode

If you have a brand new system that you plan to connect to a network, you may need to change the value of a console variable to enable the network interface; not doing so will prevent you from executing remote installations, configuring network services, or running any network-aware software.

By default, your network adapter is configured to operate on twisted-pair (10BaseT) networks. If this is compatible with your network environment,

you do not need to do anything. If this is not compatible, you may need to configure the adapter to suit the environment by resetting one or more console environment variables.

Refer to the documentation that was shipped with the network adapter for complete configuration instructions. Also refer to the `tu(7)`, `inet.local(8)`, and `lan_config(8)` reference pages for more information.

## 5.9.2 Configure Integrated System Architecture (ISA) Devices

To connect ISA devices to your system (for example, floppy controllers, graphics cards), use the `isacfg` console command to supply the correct configuration information.

The `isacfg` console command is available on systems that have an ISA bus. There is information about the command in the hardware documentation for each of the systems that support ISA bus devices. If you need to know more about the format of the command, enter:

```
>>> help isacfg
```

The System Reference Manual (SRM) console firmware provides information about the ISA bus devices that come configured with systems as well as the device handles that are set up. Use the following console firmware command to view this information:

```
>>> isacfg -all
```

When you specify a device with the `isacfg` command, you must use a handle as the name of the device. Table 5–4 lists the handles for optional ISA devices that you can configure for your system.

**Table 5–4: Optional ISA Device Handles**

Device	Handle
Ethernet LeMAC (DE203, DE204, DE205)	DE200-LE
Sound board	PCXBJ
ATI Mach64 SVGA graphics <sup>a</sup>	MACH64
Generic VGA graphics	ISA--VGA <sup>b</sup>
Any other kernel device driver kit	Handle defined by vendor <sup>c</sup>

<sup>a</sup> An address conflict occurs between ISA serial devices configured as COM4 and ATI Mach64 graphics controllers. Both ISA GX and PCI ATI Mach64 CX/GX/CT products use the address range of 2EC-2EF. This is the same address range assigned to COM4 devices. Consult the hardware documentation for more information.

<sup>b</sup> If you configure generic VGA graphics, you must reset the graphics device handle (via `isacfg`) as defined by the vendor, when the system halts after loading the subsets. This allows the X server to recognize the device.

<sup>c</sup> A kernel device driver kit is any graphics kit that is not supplied by the base operating system kit. If you are performing a RIS installation from a RIS area that has the required graphics kit already installed, the handle for `isacfg` should be set to the handle specified by the vendor.

Use the `-handle handle-name` flag to specify the device handle. The following example sets the parameters for configuring the DE205 Ethernet controller. When you issue such a command, let the input line wrap; do not press the Return key in the middle of the line:

```
>>> isacfg -slot 1 -dev 0 -mk -handle DE200-LE -irq0 5
      -iobase0 300 -membase0 d0000 -memlen0 10000
      -etyp 1 -enadev 1
```

See your hardware documentation for more information about ISA configuration.

### 5.9.3 Install Asynchronous Transfer Mode (ATM) Adapters

Install the DGLTA ATM adapter before installing the operating system so that the installation procedure properly detects the presence of the ATM adapter and automatically installs the ATM software subsets.

If you install the ATM adapter after installing the operating system, you must boot the system using the generic kernel `/genvmunix`, install the ATM software subsets from the CD-ROM or RIS server, and then run the `doconfig` command to rebuild your system kernel to enable the added ATM support.

Use the following command if you need to boot the system with the generic kernel after the installation:

```
>>> boot -fi "/genvmunix"
```

### 5.9.4 Configure RAID Subsystem

If your system has a redundant array of independent disks (RAID) subsystem, refer to your hardware owner's guide for configuration instructions before you attempt to install software.

### 5.9.5 Run the EISA Configuration Utility (ECU)

Before installing the operating system onto a system with an Extended System Integrated Architecture (EISA) bus, you must run the EISA Configuration Utility (ECU).

This utility updates EISA nvram, and its use is important for configuring a dual-boot system (with NT, UNIX, or OpenVMS) or if you have to add very new devices to older systems before the installation. Follow the instructions for running this utility in your hardware owner's guide.

If your system has an EISA bus, you received the ECU diskette with the original hardware shipment. If you do not have a current version of this

diskette in your possession, contact your support representative for a replacement.

## 5.10 Optional Task 10: Connect Peripheral Devices

If you have any new peripheral devices you want to connect, do so before you start the installation:

1. Power off your system. Then, connect the peripheral devices while your system is powered off.

---

### Note

---

Depending upon the device or devices you add, you may need to run hardware configuration utilities such as the EISA Configuration Utility (ECU) and RAID Configuration Utility (RCU), as well. Refer to your hardware documentation for more information.

---

2. Restore power to the console terminal and all additional peripheral devices.

If you connect additional peripherals or controllers after the installation, refer to the *System Administration* guide for instructions about how to reconfigure your system.

3. Restore power to the system. When the system is powered on, the peripheral devices automatically are recognized by the system.

## 5.11 You Are Ready to Begin

When all preinstallation tasks have been completed, proceed to Chapter 6; you are ready to begin a Full Installation of the operating system.

# 6

---

## Full Installation Procedures

This chapter includes step by step instructions for invoking the Full Installation and supplying all information required by the Full Installation setup process.

### Summary of Full Installation Procedures:

Make sure you have performed all prerequisite tasks and are ready to begin before starting this procedure:

1. Set processor-specific console environment variables.
2. Set standard console environment variables for all processors.
3. Boot the system from the distribution media.
4. Provide the information requested by the Full Installation interface.
5. Check your selections to make sure they are what you want; go back and change your responses if necessary.
6. Give your final confirmation to apply your installation selections and start installing software.
7. Switch CD-ROMs if you are installing Worldwide Support Software (WLS) software from CD-ROM.
8. Optionally select kernel components to build into the kernel.
9. Log in to the newly installed system.
10. Review installation log files.
11. Go to Chapter 7 to set up and configure the system for general use, the Full Installation is complete.

### 6.1 Are You Ready to Begin?

Before beginning the Full Installation, perform all prerequisite tasks described in Chapter 5. The last prerequisite task is to update the system firmware, so your system should be in console mode (at the >>> prompt). If your system is not in console mode, use the `shutdown -h now` command.

---

**Caution**

---

A Full Installation does not preserve user or data files on disks that you are installing onto, so make sure your current operating system has been backed up before you begin. If errors occur that prevent a successful installation of the operating system, you may need to restore the previous version of the operating system.

---

## 6.2 Step 1: Set Processor-Specific Console Environment Variables

Some system types require one or more special console environment variables to be set in addition to the standard console variables that are set for all processors (that are shown in Section 6.3).

Follow this procedure to determine whether or not your processor type requires special console environment variable settings:

1. Look for the corporate logo on the front panel of your hardware to determine what kind of processor you have.
2. Look for your processor type in Table 6-1. If you find your processor, proceed to Step 3. If your processor does not appear in Table 6-1, do not execute any of the commands and go directly to Section 6.3.
3. Execute the commands shown in Table 6-1 for your processor.

---

**Note**

---

Every attempt was made to make the information in Table 6-1 complete and accurate for every supported system. However, it is recommended that you also check the hardware documentation to make sure your system type does not require any other variables to be set before beginning a Full Installation. The hardware documentation is customized for each system type and is the definitive source for supported console environment variables.

---



**Table 6–1: Processor-Specific Console Variables**

<b>Processor</b>	<b>Commands to Set Console Variables</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• AlphaServer 800</li><li>• AlphaServer 1200</li><li>• AlphaServer 2100/2100A</li><li>• AlphaServer 4000/4100A</li><li>• AlphaServer 4100A</li><li>• Alpha VME 2100</li></ul>	<pre>&gt;&gt;&gt; show bus_probe_algorithm bus_probe_algorithm old &gt;&gt;&gt; set bus_probe_algorithm new &gt;&gt;&gt; init</pre>
AlphaServer 1000, 1000A	<pre>&gt;&gt;&gt; show bus_probe_algorithm bus_probe_algorithm old &gt;&gt;&gt; set bus_probe_algorithm new &gt;&gt;&gt; init &gt;&gt;&gt; set boot_file ""</pre>
AXPpci Single Board Computers with ATI Mach64 graphics controllers	<pre>&gt;&gt;&gt; set pci_parity off &gt;&gt;&gt; init</pre>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• AlphaStation 500</li><li>• AlphaStation 600/600A</li><li>• AXPvme</li><li>• AXPpci</li><li>• Alpha VME</li><li>• AlphaPC64, 164</li><li>• EB64+, EB66+, EB164 Single Board Computers</li><li>• PICMG Alpha CPUs</li><li>• Personal Workstation XP1000</li></ul>	<pre>&gt;&gt;&gt; set boot_file ""</pre>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Personal Workstation 433au, 500au, 600au</li><li>• Ultimate Workstation 533–au2</li></ul>	<pre>&gt;&gt;&gt; set os_type unix &gt;&gt;&gt; init</pre>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• AlphaServer 8200</li><li>• AlphaServer 8400</li><li>• GS160 Server</li><li>• GS140 Server</li></ul>	<pre>&gt;&gt;&gt; set boot_reset on &gt;&gt;&gt; set os_type unix &gt;&gt;&gt; set console serial</pre>

## 6.3 Step 2: Set Standard Console Environment Variables for All Processors

Set the following console environment variables for all processors:

1. Clear and reset the `boot_osflags` variable:

```
>>> set boot_osflags ""
```

2. Enter the following command to ensure that your system returns to the console prompt (`>>>`) after a system crash or power failure during installation:

```
>>> set auto_action halt1
```

---

### Note

---

Most processors reboot automatically after the software is loaded. If you are installing the operating system on behalf of another user or customer, you may want to disable this feature. Disabling automatic reboot lets you run the installation interface, load the software, then hand the system to the eventual user thus allowing the user to boot it and enter host and site specific information.

Enter the following command to disable automatic reboot:

```
>>> set boot_osflags h
```

Processors that do not support auto-reboot include the DEC 2000, 3000, and 7000 series, the AlphaStation 255, and the AlphaServer 8400.

---

## 6.4 Step 3: Boot the System

The procedure in this section applies to all supported systems and describes how to boot from CD-ROM. If you are performing the installation over the network from a remote installation services (RIS) server, refer to the *Installation Guide -- Advanced Topics* for network boot instructions. If you have problems booting your system, refer to the hardware documentation for your particular processor. If the problem is not hardware related, refer to the *System Administration* guide. The *System Administration* guide provides information about booting a generic kernel (`/genvmunix`) or booting an alternate custom kernel.

---

<sup>1</sup> Once the installation is complete, you may want to reset the `auto_action` variable to `restart` to allow your system to reboot automatically after a power or processor failure. See Section 7.9 for instructions.

Use this procedure to boot your system from the operating system CD-ROM:

1. Insert the CD-ROM labeled *Operating System Volume 1* into the disk drive.
2. If you have not already done so, enter the `init` command:

```
>>> init
```

3. Determine the console device name of your CD-ROM drive by entering the following command:

```
>>> show device
```

Depending upon your system type, a device information table similar to the following is displayed:

dka0.0.0.0.0	DKA0	RZ28
dkb0.0.0.1.0	DKB0	RZ28
dkc0.0.0.2.0	DKC0	RZ26
dkc100.1.0.2.0	DKC100	RZ26
dkc200.2.0.2.0	DKC200	RZ26
dkc300.3.0.2.0	DKC300	RZ26
<b>dke100.1.0.4.0</b>	<b>DKE100</b>	<b>RRD43</b> ←
mka500.0.0.0.0	MKA500	TLZ04
mke0.0.0.4.0	MKE0	TZ85
ewa0.0.0.6.0	EWA0	08-00-2B-2C-CE-DE
p_d0.7.0.3.0		Bus ID 7
pka0.7.0.0.0	PKA0	SCSI Bus ID 7
pkb0.7.0.1.0	PKB0	SCSI Bus ID 7
pkc0.7.0.2.0	PKC0	SCSI Bus ID 7
pke0.7.0.4.0	PKE0	SCSI Bus ID 7

In the third column to the right, look for the line with the characters `RRD` or `CD-ROM`. These characters designate a CD-ROM device. The second column in the table shows the console device name assigned to each device on your system.

In this example, the `RRD43` CD-ROM console device name is **DKE100**. You will enter this device name with the `boot` command in the next step.

4. Enter the boot command with the following syntax:

```
boot console_cdrom_device_name
```

The console `cdrom_device_name` is the name obtained in Step 3. Using this example, you would enter the following command to boot the system from the CD-ROM device:

```
>>> boot dke100
```

Output similar to the following is displayed:

```
(boot dke100.1.0.4.0)
block 0 of dke100.1.0.4.0 is a valid boot block
reading 16 blocks from dke100.1.0.4.0
bootstrap code read in
base = 1ee000, image_start = 0, image_bytes = 2000
initializing HWRPB at 2000
initializing page table at 1e0000
initializing machine state
```

```
setting affinity to the primary CPU
jumping to bootstrap code

UNIX boot - Fri Aug 25 15:49:49 EDT 2000
:
Starting installation from CD-ROM. Please wait
```

---

**Note**

---

The boot process can take several minutes. Several hardware-specific messages are displayed. The more complex the system (many peripheral devices, and so on), the longer the boot process takes.

---

This completes system boot. The installation process continues as shown in Section 6.5.

## 6.5 Successful System Boot — Select a Language for the User Interface

Upon successful system boot on systems with graphical displays, you have the option to view the installation screens in one of three languages:

- United States English
- Chinese
- Japanese

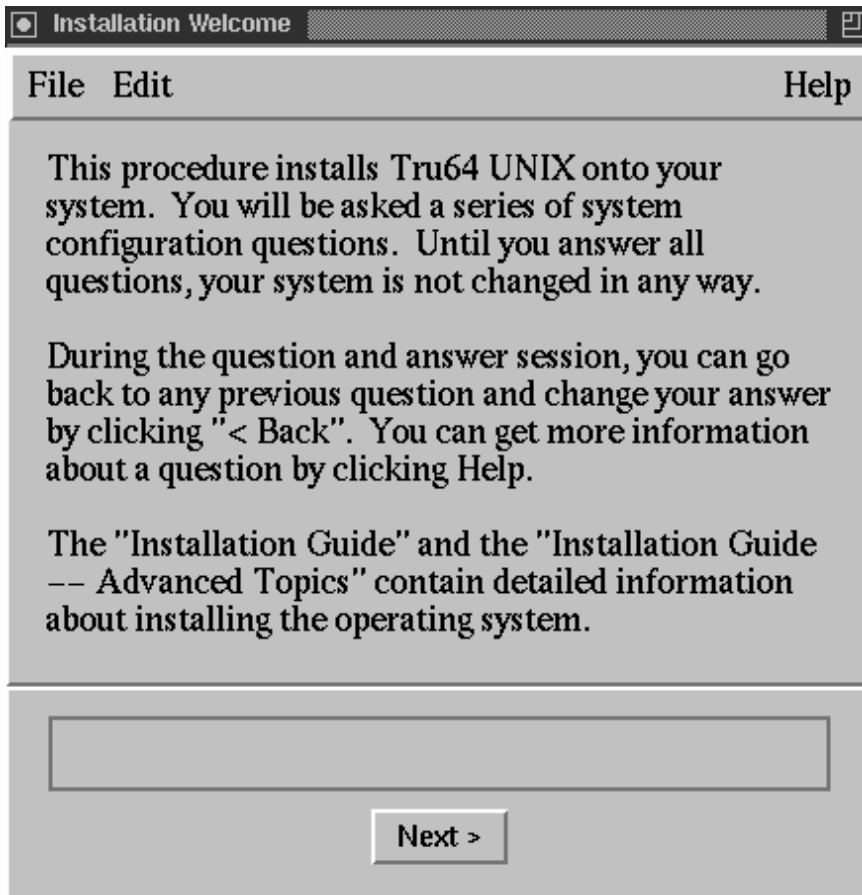
After making this selection, the remaining installation windows and dialog boxes will be displayed in the language you choose. The installation process continues as shown in Section 6.6.

## 6.6 The Welcome Screen

After you select a language in which to view the installation user interface, a Welcome message is displayed:

- On systems capable of graphical display, the `Installation Welcome` dialog box shown in Figure 6-1. The graphical user interface steps you through each phase of the installation setup process. The user interface has a task-like design and lets you go backward and forward at any time. Except for setting the system date and time immediately when you enter it, your system is not changed in any way (unless you repartition a disk or disks) until the last dialog box where you confirm the start of the installation. Online help is available from the `Help` menu.

Figure 6–1: Installation Welcome Dialog Box



If your system presents the graphical user interface, but you would prefer to use the text-based interface, select the `Quit` option from the `File` menu to exit from the installation user interface. Then, enter the following command:

```
# restart nogui
```

- On systems without graphics capabilities, the following is displayed:

```
Welcome to the Tru64 UNIX Installation Procedure
```

```
This procedure installs Tru64 UNIX onto your system. You will be
asked a series of system configuration questions. Until you answer all
questions, your system is not changed in any way.
```

```
During the question and answer session, you can go back to any
previous question and change your answer by entering: "history"
You can get more information about a question by entering: "help"
```

```
Refer to the "Installation Guide" and "Installation Guide -- Advanced
Topics" for more detailed information about installing Tru64 UNIX.
```

\*\* This system is currently running firmware revision: n.n  
See the "Tru64 UNIX Release Notes" for information regarding the  
required firmware revision.

The following options are available:

- o The "U.S. English Installation" installs only the Tru64 UNIX base software onto your system.
- o The "Installation with Worldwide Language Support" (WLS) allows you to internationalize your system. This option will allow you to install the Tru64 UNIX base software as well as WLS software. The additional software subsets provide support for various countries and their native languages.
- o The "Exit Installation" option stops the installation, and puts your system in single-user mode with superuser privileges. This option is intended for experienced UNIX system administrators who want to perform file system or disk maintenance tasks prior to the installation. This option may also be used for disaster recovery on a previously installed system.

Remember, you can always get extra information by typing help.

- 1) U.S. English Installation
- 2) Installation with Worldwide Language Support
- 3) Exit Installation

Enter your choice:

**Online help is available by entering `help` at any prompt.**

**You can change or review your selections by entering `history` at any time at any prompt, and a list of your previous selections similar to the following is displayed:**

Enter your choice: history

Select the question you want to revisit.

- 1) Installation type ( 1 )
- 2) Set root password ( LSWNUMtIomZVg )
- 3) Confirm root password ( LSWNUMtIomZVg )
- 4) Software selection type ( custom )
- 5) Select software subsets ( 34 items: OSFADVFSBIN510 OSFBASE510 OSFBIN510 OSFBINCOM510 OSFCDEDT510 OSFCDEMAIL510...)
- 6) Confirm chosen subsets ( 1 )
- 7) Select locales ( )
- 8) DISMISS history menu

Enter your choice:

- **If the Full Installation process finds an `install.cdf` file, which indicates that this system is to be installed using the Installation Cloning process, the following screen is displayed (regardless of the user interface):**

Found file `install.cdf` on <location>

A Configuration Description File was specified for use during the

installation of this system.

The Configuration Description File can be used by the installation to provide the information related to file system layout and software selection.

If you choose to use the Configuration Description File, the installation will proceed and you will not have to answer any questions. If you decide not to use the Configuration Description File, the installation will continue interactively.

Would you like to use the Configuration Description File? (y/n) [y]: **y**

In a few moments, the installation will begin. However, the Configuration Description File will first be validated for use on this system. Once the validation completes, you no longer need to be present.

If CDF validation is successful, the installation procedure continues as shown in Section 6.17.1. File systems and swap space are created as specified in the CDF, and the software subsets defined in the CDF begin loading after file system creation. Site-specific information such as host name, location and area, and date and time is obtained from the RIS server if a RIS installation is performed. If a CD-ROM installation is performed, the host name, location, and area are all provided by fields in the CDF. If the CDF variable `timeset` is blank or is set to `no`, the system requests the date and time. If `timeset` is set to `yes`, the system time is set when the first user logs in and sets it using the `date` command.

Later in the installation process, you will be required to boot from the newly installed disks, as shown in Section 6.17.2 and to enter a root password as shown in Section 6.11 (if a password is not already contained in the CDF).

If you need more information about Installation Cloning, especially if you encounter CDF validation errors, refer to the *Installation Guide -- Advanced Topics*.

## 6.7 Step 4: Supplying the Setup Information Required for a Full Installation

Table 6-2 describes the information you have to supply to the Full Installation process.

The information you supply is the same regardless of the user interface, but the order in which it is requested may be different. For instance, the graphical interface begins by asking you to supply host-specific information; the text-based interface begins by asking you if you intend to install Worldwide Language Support software.

**Table 6–2: Information You Supply for a Full Installation**

<b>Information Requested by Full Installation</b>	<b>User Action</b>
Host Information	<p>If you are installing from a CD-ROM, supply the following information:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Host Name</li><li>• Current Date</li><li>• Current Time</li><li>• Geographic Area</li><li>• Location</li></ul> <p>If you do not enter this information during the installation setup, you will be prompted for it later in the configuration phase. Section 6.8, Section 6.9, and Section 6.10 provide guidelines for entering host- and site-specific information. When installing the operating system from a RIS server, the host and site information is obtained automatically from the server.</p>
Root Password	<p>Create a password for the <code>root</code> user. If you do not enter a password during installation setup, you will be asked to create and confirm a password before system configuration (after reboot). Guidelines for choosing an effective password are shown in Section 6.11.</p>
Software Selection	<p>Select the type of software subsets you want to install. The default is to install only mandatory software subsets. But, you have the opportunity to install optional software or to install all mandatory and all optional software subsets. Section 6.12 describes the subset selection options.</p>
Worldwide Language Support	<p>Specify whether or not you want to install software for additional languages. The text-based interface asks you to make this decision at the onset of the process; the graphical user interface asks you to select the languages you want during the software selection step.</p>



**Table 6–2: Information You Supply for a Full Installation (cont.)**

Information Requested by Full Installation	User Action
File System Layout	You decide whether to use the default file system layout or to customize the file system layout for the / (root), /usr, /var, and <code>il8n</code> file systems and swap areas. You can accept the defaults if you are installing the operating system on a single disk and want to use the default file system layout. Section 6.14 describes your file system layout options. Section 6.14.4 describes the option to install into Logical Storage Manager (LSM) volumes on each disk you use for the installation.
Kernel Component Options	Select the type of kernel components to build into the kernel. You can choose the option to include mandatory kernel components only, mandatory plus your choice of optional components, or all mandatory and all optional components. Section 6.18 describes these kernel options. If you select the option to customize kernel component selection, you perform that task later after the first system reboot.

The Full Installation procedures start in Section 6.8 and end in Section 6.16. These sections more closely follow the sequence of the graphical interface, however, you should use the same guidelines for the text-based interface. Any difference in how you supply information is noted.

**Note**

If you are installing the operating system on behalf of another user or customer, you may not want to supply any host or site-specific information. You can accomplish this by doing the following:

1. Set the console environment variable `boot_osflags` to `halt` (see Section 6.3).
2. Do not enter a host name, the date or time, location or area, or a root password; the Full Installation will halt after the software subsets load to request this information. This allows the eventual user of the system to boot the system and specify their own host- and site-specific information.

## 6.8 Setting the Host Name

The host name is used to identify your system on the network.

For the graphical interface, a variety of host and site-specific information is supplied on the `Host Information` dialog box shown in Figure 6–2. Refer to Section 6.9 and Section 6.10 for information about supplying information for the remaining fields on this dialog box.

**Figure 6–2: Host Information Dialog Box**

Host Information

File Edit Help

Enter values for the following host specific information. If the information is not available at this time, refer to the "Installation Guide" for options on entering this information at a later time.

Memory Size: 64 MB

Firmware Rev.: 7.0

Host Name:

Area: America

Location: New\_York

Date:  /  /

Time:  :

< Back Next >

If you do not supply a host name, the Full Installation stops after the system reboots but before building the tailored kernel to prompt you for a host name.

### 6.8.1 Guidelines for Choosing a Host Name

The following are guidelines for choosing a host name:

- Host names may contain from 2 to 63 alphanumeric upper or lower case characters (a-z, A-Z, 0-9). Fully qualified host names (for example, `mystem.boston.bigcorp.com`) can contain a maximum of 254 characters. Each component of the domain name can contain up to 63 characters and must be separated by a period.
- Host names must begin with a letter.
- Hyphens (-) and periods (.) are permitted in host names.
- Before deciding upon a host name, consult with the site administrator to make sure you choose a unique name and to determine if site-specific

restrictions (such as maximum length) or naming conventions have been defined.

- If your system is running a previous version of the operating system and is already connected to a network, you should keep the same host name because changing it would impact how your system is recognized on the network.

## 6.8.2 Host Name Samples

Table 6–3 shows samples of correct and incorrect host names:

**Table 6–3: Samples of Correct and Incorrect Host Names**

Correct Host Names	Incorrect Host Names
mssystem	generic or binary <sup>a</sup>
y2k-system.com	2000-system.com
system1	1.system
xyz-college.edu	xyz_college.edu

<sup>a</sup> Do not use the words `generic` or `binary` for your host name because they have been reserved for use by the operating system.

## 6.9 Setting the Date and Time

To set the system date, enter today's date in the following order:

- `mm` is the current month.
- `dd` is the current day.
- `[cc]yy` is the current year in two (`yy`) or four (`ccyy`) digits. For example, `00` and `2000` are correct entries.

Digits entered in the format and order `07 06 2000` and `07 06 00` both represent July 6, 2000. The text-based interface requires that a hyphen (-) separate each set of digits, for example, `07-06-00`.

To set the system time, enter the time in two sets of two digits (using the 24-hour clock format) in the following order:

- `hh` is the current hour in two digits.
- `mm` is the current minutes in two digits.

For example, the number `14` entered in the `hh` field represents 2 o'clock in the afternoon, and the number `06` entered in the `mm` field represents the sixth minute of the hour.

If you enter either a date or a time, you must enter the other. As soon as you enter a date and time, the system date and clock is set immediately.

If you do not supply a date and time, and did not set up your system to halt before system reboot, the Full Installation stops after the system reboots but before building the tailored kernel to prompt you for the current date and time.

## 6.10 Setting the Location and Area (Formerly Time Zones)

Starting with Version 5.0 of the operating system, the naming convention for time zones is the Area/Location format (for example, Asia/Tokyo or Pacific/Honolulu) where Area is the name of a continent or ocean, and Location is the name of a major city or locale within that area. Earlier versions of the operating system used the Country/Time Zone style (for example, US/Eastern). All /etc/zoneinfo directories and time zone files are still available for compatibility, however many of the files are now hard links to their renamed counterparts.

Your location and area sets the time zone. You should select the location and area that best describes your geographic location. The default location is America/New\_York. You have the option to set the Location and Area to none if you are installing this system on behalf of another user.

---

### Note

---

If a system is relocated to another site, you can change the time zone by using the `tzselect` utility. Refer to the `tzselect(8)` reference page and *System Administration* for more information.

---

**Table 6–4: Mapping of Time Zones to Location/Area Style**

Obsolete Time Zone	New Location/Area
Australia/ACT	Australia/Sydney
Australia/LHI	Australia/Lord_Howe
Australia/NSW	Australia/Sydney
Australia/North	Australia/Darwin
Australia/Queensland	Australia/Brisbane
Australia/South	Australia/Adelaide
Australia/Tasmania	Australia/Hobart
Australia/Victoria	Australia/Melbourne
Australia/West	Australia/Perth
Australia/Yancowinna	Australia/Broken_Hill
Belfast	Europe/Belfast

**Table 6–4: Mapping of Time Zones to Location/Area Style (cont.)**

<b>Obsolete Time Zone</b>	<b>New Location/Area</b>
Brazil/Acre	America/Porto_Acre
Brazil/DeNoronha	America/Noronha
Brazil/East	America/Sao_Paulo
Brazil/West	America/Manaus
Canada/Atlantic	America/Halifax
Canada/Central	America/Winnipeg
Canada/East-Saskatchewan	America/Regina
Canada/Eastern	America/Montreal
Canada/Mountain	America/Edmonton
Canada/Newfoundland	America/St_Johns
Canada/Pacific	America/Vancouver
Canada/Saskatchewan	America/Regina
Canada/Yukon	America/Whitehorse
Chile/Continental	America/Santiago
Chile/EasterIsland	Pacific/Easter
Cuba	America/Havana
Dublin	Europe/Dublin
Egypt	Africa/Cairo
GB-Eire	Europe/London
GMT	Etc/GMT
GMT+0	Etc/GMT+0
GMT+1	Etc/GMT+1
GMT+10	Etc/GMT+10
GMT+11	Etc/GMT+11
GMT+12	Etc/GMT+12
GMT+13	Etc/GMT+13
GMT+2	Etc/GMT+2
GMT+3	Etc/GMT+3
GMT+4	Etc/GMT+4
GMT+5	Etc/GMT+5

**Table 6–4: Mapping of Time Zones to Location/Area Style (cont.)**

<b>Obsolete Time Zone</b>	<b>New Location/Area</b>
GMT+6	Etc/GMT+6
GMT+7	Etc/GMT+7
GMT+8	Etc/GMT+8
GMT+9	Etc/GMT+9
GMT-0	Etc/GMT-0
GMT-1	Etc/GMT-1
GMT-10	Etc/GMT-10
GMT-11	Etc/GMT-11
GMT-12	Etc/GMT-12
GMT-2	Etc/GMT-2
GMT-3	Etc/GMT-3
GMT-4	Etc/GMT-4
GMT-5	Etc/GMT-5
GMT-6	Etc/GMT-6
GMT-7	Etc/GMT-7
GMT-8	Etc/GMT-8
GMT-9	Etc/GMT-9
GMT0	Etc/GMT0
GMT1	Etc/GMT+1
GMT10	Etc/GMT+10
GMT11	Etc/GMT+11
GMT12	Etc/GMT+12
GMT13	Etc/GMT+13
GMT2	Etc/GMT+2
GMT3	Etc/GMT+3
GMT4	Etc/GMT+4
GMT5	Etc/GMT+5
GMT6	Etc/GMT+6
GMT7	Etc/GMT+7
GMT8	Etc/GMT+8

**Table 6–4: Mapping of Time Zones to Location/Area Style (cont.)**

<b>Obsolete Time Zone</b>	<b>New Location/Area</b>
GMT9	Etc/GMT+9
Greenwich	Etc/Greenwich
Hongkong	Asia/Hong_Kong
Iceland	Atlantic/Reykjavik
Iran	Asia/Tehran
Israel	Asia/Jerusalem
Jamaica	America/Jamaica
Japan	Asia/Tokyo
Libya	Africa/Tripoli
London	Europe/London
Mexico/BajaNorte	America/Tijuana
Mexico/BajaSur	America/Mazatlan
Mexico/General	America/Mexico_City
NZ	Pacific/Auckland
NZ-CHAT	Pacific/Chatham
Navajo	America/Denver
PRC	Asia/Shanghai
Poland	Europe/Warsaw
ROC	Asia/Taipei
ROK	Asia/Seoul
Singapore	Asia/Singapore
Turkey	Europe/Istanbul
UCT	Etc/UCT
US/Alaska	America/Anchorage
US/Aleutian	America/Adak
US/Arizona	America/Phoenix
US/Central	America/Chicago
US/East-Indiana	America/Indianapolis
US/Eastern	America/New_York
US/Hawaii	Pacific/Honolulu

**Table 6–4: Mapping of Time Zones to Location/Area Style (cont.)**

<b>Obsolete Time Zone</b>	<b>New Location/Area</b>
US/Indiana-Starke	America/Indiana/Knox
US/Michigan	America/Detroit
US/Mountain	America/Denver
US/Pacific	America/Los_Angeles
US/Samoa	Pacific/Pago_Pago
UTC	Etc/UTC
Universal	Etc/Universal
W-SU	Europe/Moscow
Zulu	Etc/Zulu

If you do not supply a location and area, and did not set up your system to halt before system reboot (see Section 6.6), the Full Installation stops after system reboot and prompts you for location and area information.

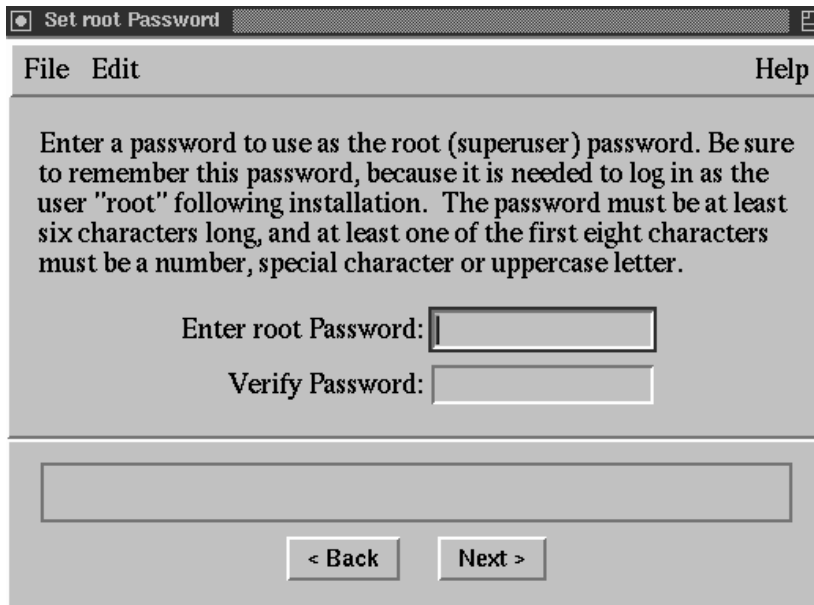
## 6.11 Setting the Root Password

A UNIX operating system permits a superuser to have permissions that supersede those of ordinary users. This superuser is often referred to as the `root` user. The superuser is usually the person who is responsible for system administration tasks. This user has access to all files and all devices and is not restricted from changing anything on the operating system. For this reason, the `root` user (or `root` account), needs a special password. Section 6.11.1 contains guidelines for choosing an effective `root` password.

Figure 6–3 shows the Set `root` Password dialog box.



**Figure 6–3: Set Root Password Dialog Box**



Choose a password that conforms to the following rules:

- Must have a minimum of 6 to a maximum of 16 characters.
- Should contain a combination of upper and lower case letters.
- At least one of the first six characters must be a number, a special character, or an upper case letter.
- It is recommended, but not mandatory, to use numbers and special characters such as the dollar sign (\$), the percent sign (%), the number sign (#), the period (.), the hyphen (-), the underscore (\_), or the at sign (@) in your password. If you do not use a special character or number in the password, at least one of the first six characters must be an upper case letter or a number.

When you enter the password, it is not displayed on your screen for security reasons. You must enter the new password again for verification. Remember this password because you will need it to log in as the `root` user the first time you log in to the system after the installation. You can change the `root` password at any time (using the `passwd` command) after the system is installed.

If you do not supply a root password, and did not set up your system to halt before system reboot, the Full Installation stops after the system reboots but before building the tailored kernel to prompt you for a `root` password.

### 6.11.1 Guidelines for Choosing Effective Passwords

When choosing a root password, you should *not* use:

- Words found in any dictionary (in any language)
- Personal information about you or your family such as first and last names, addresses, birth dates, telephone numbers, names of pets, and so on
- Any combination of words in the dictionary and personal information

Do not choose a password that can be guessed by someone who knows you. Because the `root` user has absolute power over the operating system, the `root` password should be carefully protected. The basic guideline is to make the password something that you can remember but difficult for someone else to guess.

### 6.11.2 Root Password Samples

Table 6–5 shows examples of passwords that adhere to suggested guidelines and some that do not. These passwords are shown for illustrative purposes only; do not use any of them for your password.

**Table 6–5: Sample Root Passwords**

Correct Root Passwords	Passwords That Are Not Recommended	Why Password Violates Guidelines
OhU8one2too	johnsmith	Proper name with all letters lower case
UrGr8t!!	123MainStreet	Home address
parTe2nite	MyDogLassie	Name of pet
99Pnt.99%	6July58	Birth date of family member

## 6.12 Choosing the Type of Software to Be Installed

After supplying host information, setting the date and time, and specifying a root password, the next step in the Full Installation is to select the type of software to install. If you are using the graphical user interface, the Software Selection dialog box is shown in Figure 6–4. The text-based interface displays the same information.

**Figure 6–4: Software Selection Dialog Box**



Table 6–6 describes the three classifications of software subsets. Appendix C provides descriptions of the individual software subsets.

**Table 6–6: Description of Software Selection Options**

Option	Description
Mandatory Only	This option installs the software subsets that are the minimum required to run the base operating system. Mandatory software subsets always are installed. This is the default choice for the graphical user interface.

**Table 6–6: Description of Software Selection Options (cont.)**

Option	Description
All Software	This option installs all base operating system mandatory software subsets and all optional software subsets, excluding Worldwide Language Support subsets (unless you select additional country support) and TruCluster Server (TCR) software, which is a separate kit.
Customize	This option lets you choose which optional software subsets to install in addition to the mandatory software. Section 6.12.1 provides hints for customizing the software selection process.
Country Support	This is where you select support for one or more additional languages if you are using the graphical user interface. Each country has a set of software subsets that is designed to allow localization of the operating system. The default is the United States English language. If you install all base operating system subsets plus one or more additional languages, all WLS subsets for each selected country are installed.

Refer to Appendix C for a description of the mandatory, optional, and WLS software subsets.

### 6.12.1 Hints for Selecting Optional Software

Selecting the `Customize` option and clicking on the `Edit List...` button displays the `Software Section: Edit List` dialog box shown in Figure 6–5, which is where you select the optional software you want to install.

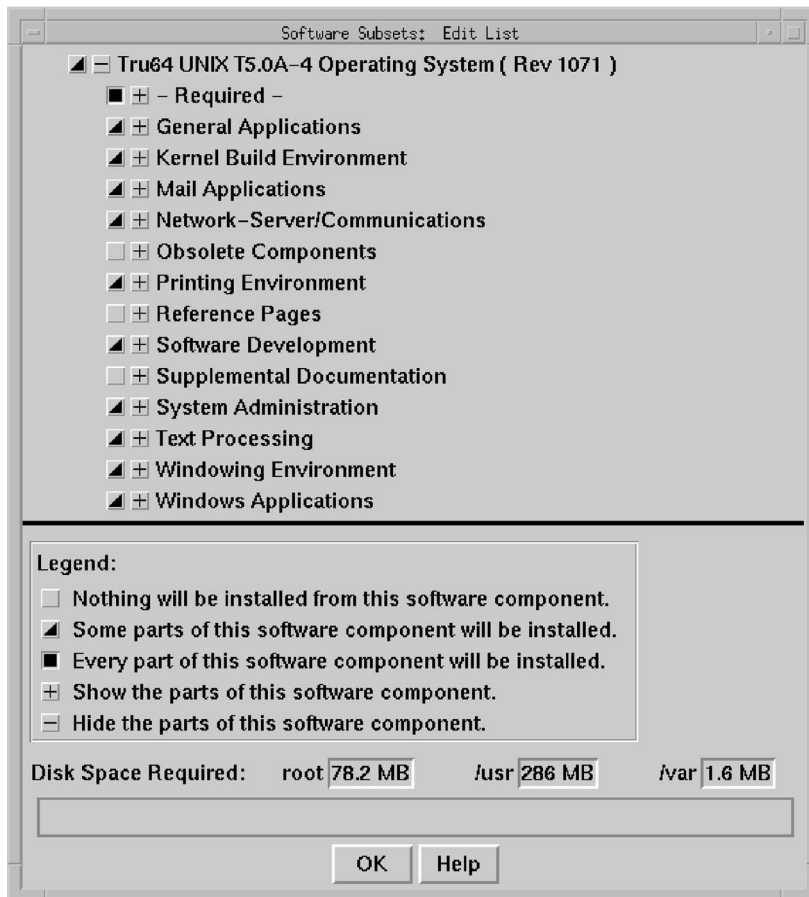
---

**Note**

The legend at the bottom of the dialog box describes the current status of each software subset. Click on a plus sign (+) to view the individual software subsets contained in a software category; click on a minus sign (–) to close a category.

---

**Figure 6–5: Software Subsets: Edit List Dialog Box**



When making software subset selections, you can select a software subset category (such as General Applications), or an individual software subset within a category (such as DOS Tools). If you select a software subset that has a dependency with another subset that is not yet selected, the other subset is selected automatically. When a subset with dependencies is selected, a dialog box with a message similar to the following is displayed:

```
The chosen subset(s) require one or more additional subset(s)
which will be loaded automatically:
* Doc. Preparation Tools (OSFDCMT510)
```

An alternative to selecting one software subset (or category) at a time is to select the topmost category, Tru64 UNIX V5.1 Operating System, and then click on the categories or subsets you do not want. Adding all subsets results in more software than your system needs, so remember to remove all of the hardware-specific subsets related to keyboard types, X servers, and

fonts. The user interface will not let you remove software subsets that are mandatory for your system's hardware configuration.

A suggested procedure for selectively choosing optional software to install:

1. Review Appendix C for a description of all software subsets.
2. In the `Software Selection Dialog Box`, select `Customize`, then click on the `Edit List...` button.
3. Select the optional software subsets you want. When you have completed selecting the subsets, note the `Disk Space Required` for the `/`, `/usr`, and `/var` file systems, which is shown at the bottom of the dialog box. Use this information to select disks and partitions that are large enough to hold the software you want to install

---

**Note**

---

If you do not want to use the recommended partitions offered by the Full Installation process, read the *Installation Guide -- Advanced Topics* for information about partitioning disks, then use the `Disk Space Required` figures to select which disks to select later on in the Full Installation process.

---

## 6.13 Choosing the Type of Kernel Components to Build into the Kernel

The next step in the Full Installation is to choose the type of kernel components to build into the kernel later in the configuration phase of the installation process. Regardless of the interface, you have three options for including kernel components into the kernel. Figure 6-6 depicts what you see if you are using the graphical interface.

**Figure 6–6: Kernel Options Dialog Box**

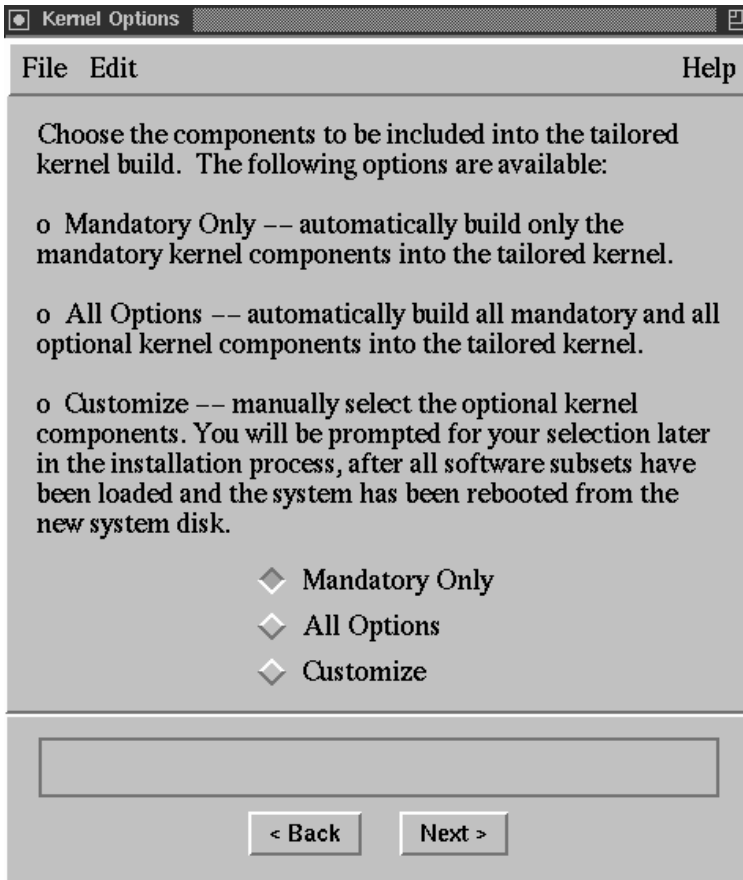


Table 6–7 describes the kernel component options:

**Table 6–7: Description of Kernel Selection Options**

Option	Description
Mandatory Only	This option builds into the kernel the minimum mandatory kernel components required for the proper operation of the software subsets you plan to install. This is the default option for the graphical user interface.

**Table 6–7: Description of Kernel Selection Options (cont.)**

Option	Description
All Options	This option builds all kernel components into the kernel. Each kernel component loads additional code into the kernel; therefore, selecting <code>All Options</code> can significantly and unnecessarily increase the size of the kernel and impact performance.
Customize	This option lets you select specific kernel components from a <code>Kernel Options Selection</code> menu that is presented after system reboot (see Section 6.17.2). The kernel components presented on the menu depend on the software subsets that were installed. See Section 6.18 for more information about selecting kernel components.

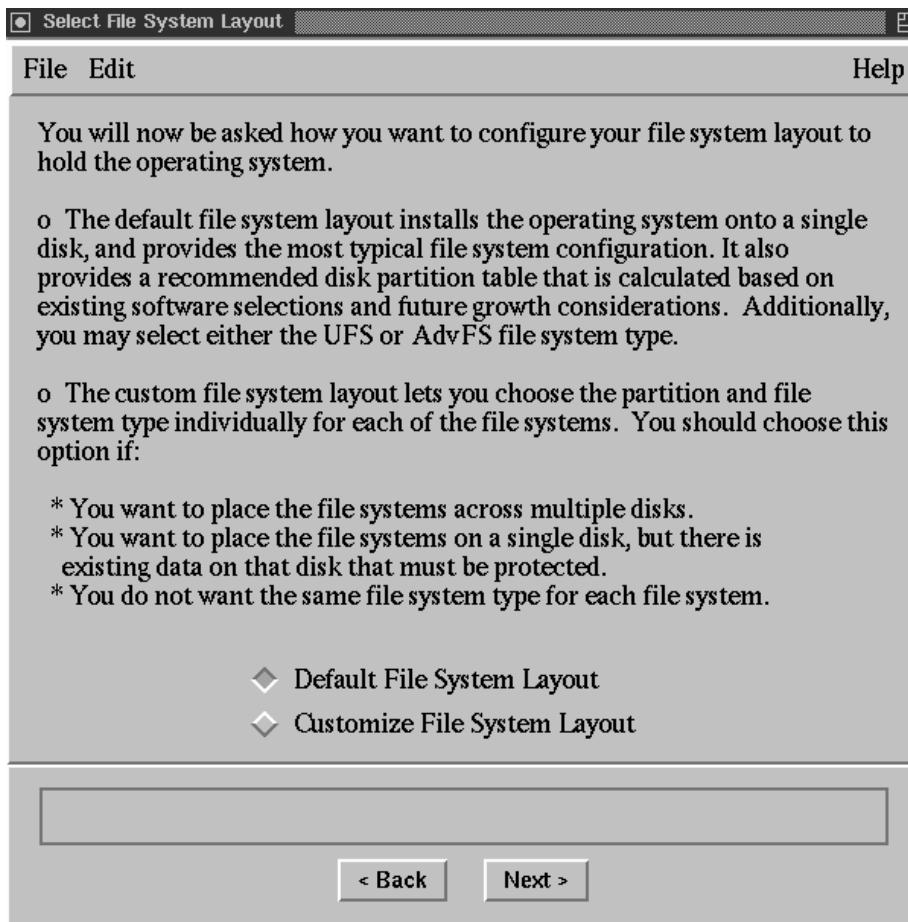
## 6.14 Selecting the Type of File System Layout

After selecting the software subsets to install, you have to decide where to install them. Selecting the file system layout involves selecting the disk or disks and disk partitions on which you want to install the standard UNIX file systems: `/`, `/usr`, `/var`, `/usr/i18n` (if you selected one or more additional languages), and swap space. You have to then decide whether you want to assign the Advanced File System (AdvFS), which is the default, or the UNIX File System (UFS) as the file system type for each file system. The Full Installation offers the option to choose a default file system layout or the option to completely customize the file system layout.

The dialog box shown in Figure 6–7 shows the file system layout choices.



**Figure 6–7: Select File System Layout Dialog Box**



Section 6.14.1 describes the situations when you should choose the default file system layout, and Section 6.14.2 describes the situations when you should choose to customize the file system layout.

### 6.14.1 When Should I Use the Default File System Layout?

You should use the default file system layout if any one of the following statements is true:

- When you do not have any data on the disk that you want to retain. The default file system layout rewrites the disk partition table and may overwrite existing data.
- Your system has only one disk, which must have 1 GB or greater capacity.

- You want to install the operating system on one disk even if your system has more than one.

While possible, a Full Installation to a single 1 GB disk is not advisable if you have more than one disk. Apart from degraded performance, it is not possible to store crash dumps, and it is very difficult to recover the root disk in the event of a disk crash.

The recommended strategy is to place the / (root) file system on one disk and place the /usr file system and swap area on another disk. User data should be located on other disks.

- You do not need to create custom disk partitions.
- You only need one swap area.
- You only want one file system type for all file systems.

Regardless of the interface you are using, you have to make a few choices if you want to use the default file system layout:

1. **Choose one disk on which to install the operating system.**

The disk you choose must be 1 GB or greater in size. The recommended partition table is applied to the disk that you select. As shown in Table 6–8, the partition sizes vary depending upon the capacity of the disk.

**Table 6–8: Recommended Partition Table by Disk Capacity**

	Disk Capacity		
	1 GB	2 GB	3 GB or Larger
/ (root) file system on the <code>a</code> partition	128 MB	256 MB	384 MB
/usr file system on the <code>g</code> partition	745 MB	1490 MB	2235 MB
swap space on the <code>b</code> partition	128 MB	256 MB <sup>a</sup>	384 MB <sup>a</sup>

<sup>a</sup> The swap space could be even greater depending on the size of the `b` partition in the default disk partition table

2. **Choose one file system type for all file systems.**

Your choices are the Advanced File System (AdvFS), which is the default, or the UNIX file system (UFS). For a description and comparison of UFS and AdvFS, see the *Installation Guide -- Advanced Topics*.

---

**Note**

---

If the system is going to be a member of a cluster, you must select AdvFS as the file system type.

---

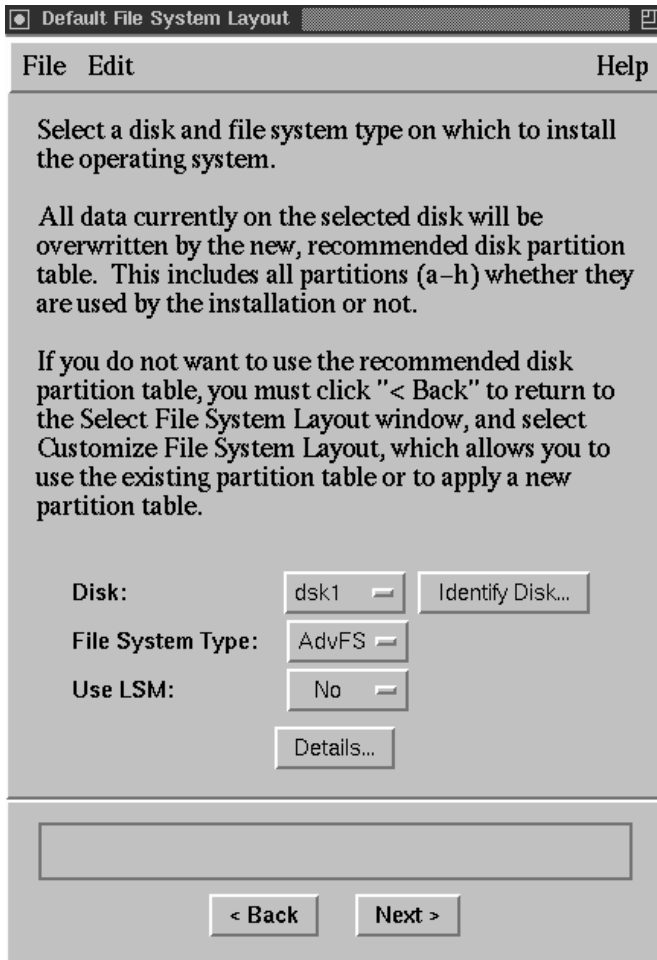
**3. Decide whether or not to install into LSM volumes.**

Section 6.14.4 provides more information about the Logical Storage Manager (LSM) to help you decide whether or not you want to install into LSM volumes.

What you see if you choose the default file system layout depends upon the interface you are using.

- If you are using the graphical user interface, choosing the Default File System Layout option opens the dialog box shown in Figure 6-8.

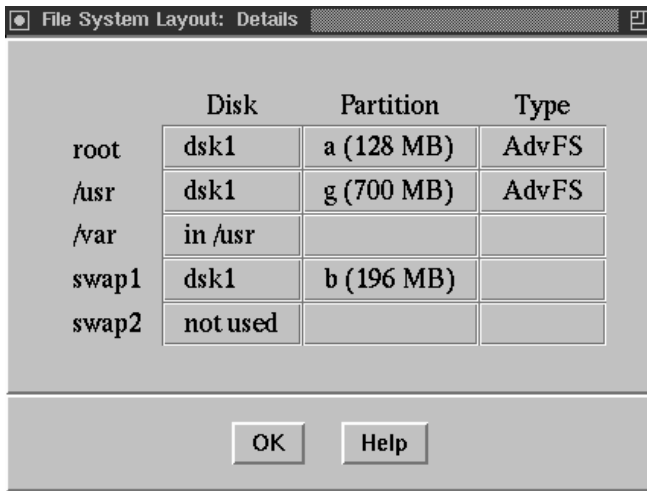
**Figure 6–8: Default File System Layout Dialog Box**



Hold the left mouse button down over the disk button labeled `dsk1` to obtain a list of disks available on your system. Highlight the disk you want to use, then release the mouse button.

If you are using the graphical user interface, you can verify that you selected the correct disk by clicking on the `Details...` button to display the disk details shown in Figure 6–9. The partition sizes shown are for illustrative purposes only. The `/usr/i18n` file system contains the subsets required for *internationalization* (`i18n`) and is shown only if you selected support for one or more additional languages.

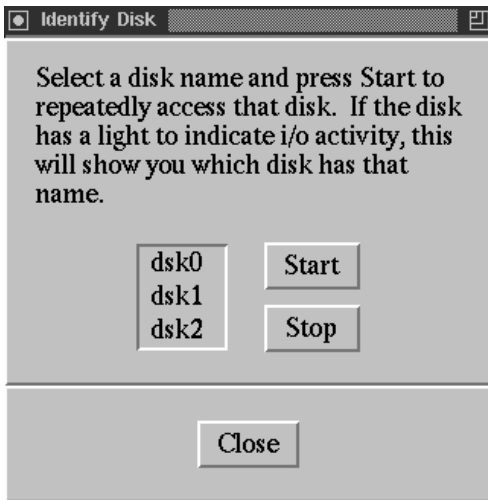
**Figure 6–9: Default File System Layout: Details Dialog Box**



If after reviewing the disk details you are not satisfied with the disk or file system type you chose, close the Details dialog box and choose another disk or file system type. If you are still not satisfied, go back to the File System Layout dialog box and select the option to customize the file system layout to obtain a more suitable configuration.

If you are unable to determine which of the physical disks is associated with a `dsk*` device name, click on the Identify Disk... button to open the dialog box shown in Figure 6–10. Follow the instructions in the dialog box to blink the input/output light on the disk.

**Figure 6–10: Identify Disk Dialog Box**



- Example 6–1 shows the text-based interface disk selection dialog box for a default file system layout

### Example 6–1: Textual Interface: Default File System Layout

---

Select a disk for the root file system. The root file system will be placed on the "a" partition of the disk you choose.

To visually locate a disk, enter "ping <disk>", where <disk> is the device name (e.g., dsk0) of the disk you want to locate. If that disk has a visible indicator light, it will blink until you are ready to continue.

	Device Name	Size in GB	Controller Type	Disk Model	Location
1)	dsk0	8.5	SCSI	RZ1DF-BF	bus-0-targ-0-lun-0
2)	dsk1	8.5	SCSI	HSZ70	bus-4-targ-0-lun-0
3)	dsk2	8.5	SCSI	HSZ70	bus-4-targ-0-lun-1

Select the file system type. All of the file systems will be created with this type.

- 1) UFS -- UNIX File System
- 2) AdvFS -- Advanced File System

Enter your choice: 1

You have requested this file system layout:

- \* root file system on dsk0a, type UFS
- \* /usr file system on dsk0g, type UFS
- \* var will be a directory in the /usr file system

### Example 6–1: Textual Interface: Default File System Layout (cont.)

---

- \* il8n will be a directory in the /usr file system
- \* first swapping area (swap1) will be on dsk0b
- \* no second swapping area (swap2)

Is this the correct file system layout (y/n)

---

Example 6–2 shows a default file system layout screen when the system has only one disk.

### Example 6–2: Text—Based Interface: Default File System Layout with One Disk

---

Only one disk detected in this system (/dev/dsk0, SCSI RZ1DF-BF type). All file systems will be on that disk.

Select the file system type. All of the file systems will be created with this type.

- 1) UFS -- UNIX File System
- 2) AdvFS -- Advanced File System

Enter your choice:

---

If you are using the text-based interface and you are not sure which physical disk is associated with a particular `dsk*` name, you may be able to identify it by entering `ping disk_name` as shown in Example 6–3. If the disk has a visible input/output light, it will start blinking. Not all disks have an input/output light, so not all disks can be identified using this method.

### Example 6–3: Identifying Disks in the Textual Interface

---

To visually locate a disk, enter "ping <disk>", where <disk> is the device name (e.g., dsk0) of the disk you want to locate. If that disk has a visible indicator light, it will blink until you are ready to continue.

	Device Name	Size in GB	Controller Type	Disk Model	Location
1)	dsk0	8.5	SCSI	RZ1DF-BF	bus-0-targ-0-lun-0
2)	dsk1	8.5	SCSI	HSZ70	bus-4-targ-0-lun-0
3)	dsk2	8.5	SCSI	HSZ70	bus-4-targ-0-lun-1

Enter your choice: **ping dsk0**

### Example 6–3: Identifying Disks in the Textual Interface (cont.)

---

```
** Identifying device dsk0
```

---

When you have made your decisions for the default file system layout, the Full Installation continues as described in Section 6.15.

#### 6.14.2 When Should I Customize the File System Layout?

You should customize the file system layout if any one of the following statements is true:

- You want to install the standard UNIX file systems on more than one disk. Up to six different disks can be specified. Each file system and swap area can reside on its own disk.

The recommended strategy is to place the / (root) file system on one disk and place the /usr file system and swap area on another disk.

User data should be located on other disks. It is recommended that you mount a separate file system or file systems for user accounts so that user information is not overwritten during future Full Installations. It also makes disaster recovery less complicated because you can reinstall the operating system without losing user accounts.

- You want to use both AdvFS and UFS file system types.
- You want to create custom disk partition sizes.
- You need two swap areas.
- You want to preserve existing data on disks you are installing to as described in Section 6.14.5.
- You plan to use the system as a dataless server or a RIS server. The *Installation Guide -- Advanced Topics* provides details about the extra space needed in the /var file system for these types of servers.

You have to make a few choices if you want to use the Custom File System Layout:

1. **Decide whether or not to install into LSM volumes.**

Section 6.14.4 provides more information about LSM to help you decide whether or not you want to use it.

2. **Choose a disk and disk partition for each file system.**

You must choose a disk and disk partition to hold each of the following file systems: / (root), /usr, /var, and /usr/i18n (if you want /usr/i18n to be a file system rather than a directory). The /usr/i18n



file system contains the subsets required for *internationalization* (i18n) if you selected additional language support.

The / (root) file system must be on the a partition of the disk you choose to hold it; you cannot change this. You have the option to locate the /var and /usr/i18n file systems within the /usr file system instead of on their own disk partition.

If you are unable to determine which of your physical disks is associated with a dsk\* device name, click on the Identify Disk... button to open the identify disk dialog box shown in Figure 6-10, or enter ping *disk\_name* if you are using the text-based interface.

As shown in Figure 6-11, instead of the rz\* device names you may have been accustomed to in previous versions of the operating system, you will see dsk\* device names. Refer to Appendix A for general information about device naming conventions. Refer to Section A.4 for information about preserving your existing device name database during a Full Installation if your system is already running a previous version of the operating system.

3. **Choose a disk and disk partition for one or two swap areas.**

You have the option to allocate two swap areas. It is recommended that you place swap areas on different disks and choose the fastest disks for swap areas. The *Installation Guide -- Advanced Topics* contains more recommendations for calculating the amount of swap space you need and where to place swap space.

As a frame of reference, the recommended file system layout uses 128 MB as the default size of the swap partition on a 1 GB disk, 256 MB on a 2 GB disk, and 384 MB on disks that are 3 GB or larger.

4. **Choose a file system type for each file system.**

You can choose between the Advanced File System (AdvFS), which is the default, or the UNIX file system (UFS) for each file system. For a description and comparison of UFS and AdvFS, see the *Installation Guide -- Advanced Topics*.

---

**Note**

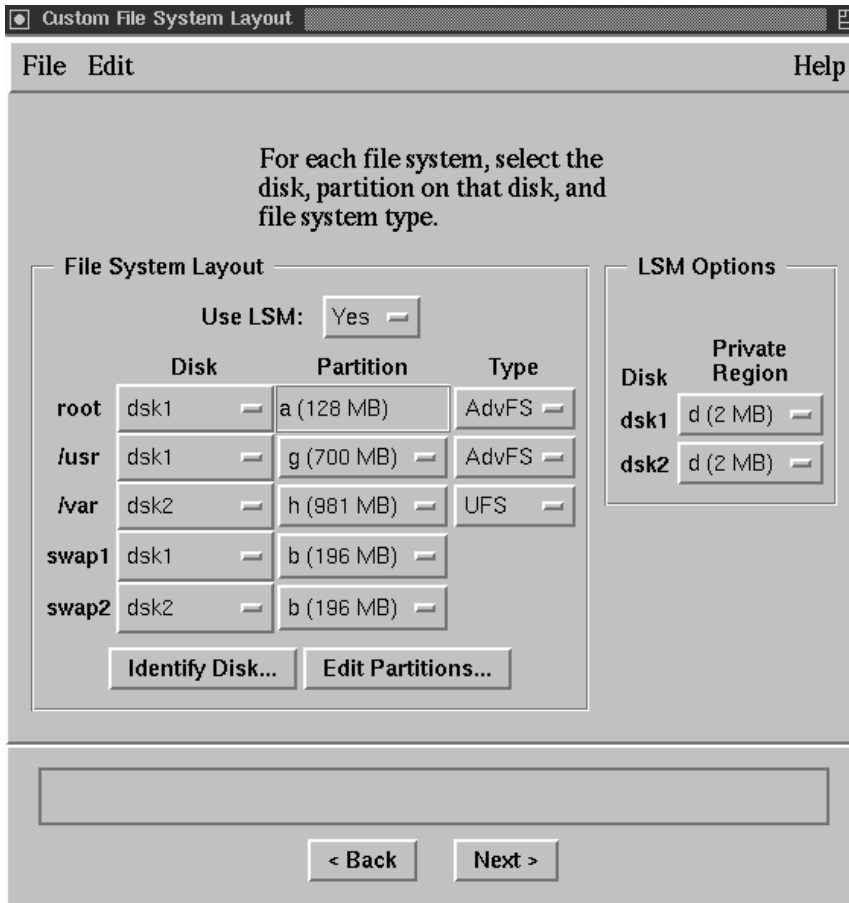
If this system is going to be a member of a cluster, you must use AdvFS as the file system type.

---

What you see when customizing the file system layout depends upon the interface you are using:

- If you are using the graphical user interface, the Customize File System Layout option displays the dialog box shown in Figure 6-11.

Figure 6–11: Custom File System Layout Dialog Box



The `Custom` option lets you configure your disks and file systems any way you choose.

The `a` partition of the disk that contains the `/` (root) file system must be at least 128 MB in size or you will not be able to continue the installation.

For an idea of the recommended disk partition sizes for a single disk installation, refer to Table 6–8, which shows the recommended partition table for a default file system layout depending upon disk capacity.

- The disk selection screens of the text-based interface are similar to those shown in Example 6–4. The interface provides some guidelines for selecting partitions that are large enough to hold each file system. In this example, the user chose to install into LSM volumes, hence the 2 MB `d` partition to hold the LSM private region.

### Example 6–4: Customized Disk Selection Using the Text-Based Interface

---

Select the dsk0 partition where the LSM private region will reside. This partition must be larger than 2 MB in order to accommodate the LSM configuration for this disk.

	Partition	Size	Start Block	End Block	Overlaps
1)	b	128MB	262144	524287	c
2)	d	2.0MB	524288	528383	c
3)	e	372MB	528384	1289621	c g
4)	f	372MB	1289622	2050859	c g
5)	g	743MB	528384	2050859	c e f

Enter your choice: 2

Select the dsk0 partition where the /usr file system will reside. This partition must be larger than 269 MB in order to fit the software that you have selected. However, a size of 700 MB or greater is recommended to allow for additional layered software and future upgrade considerations.

	Partition	Size	Start Block	End Block	Overlaps
1)	b	128MB	262144	524287	c
2)	e	372MB	528384	1289621	c g
3)	f	372MB	1289622	2050859	c g
4)	g	743MB	528384	2050859	c e f

Enter your choice: g

Select the file system type for the /usr file system.

- 1) UFS -- UNIX File System
- 2) AdvFS -- Advanced File System

Enter your choice: 2

---

Continue making disk and disk partition selections until all file systems and swap areas are assigned.

When you have made your decisions for the customized file system layout, the Full Installation continues as described in Section 6.15.

### 6.14.3 Partitioning Disks for a Custom File System Layout

Both user interfaces provide access to disk configuration tools if you need to repartition a disk to accommodate a customized file system layout:

- The Disk Configuration application, `diskconfig`, is invoked directly from the graphical user interface by clicking on the Edit Partitions... button on the Custom File System Layout dialog box. You cannot change the file system type from the Disk Configuration application. This feature is normally available when the application is invoked independent from an installation. Any changes you make to the existing disk label are not written until the actual installation process starts. After making your changes and exiting the Disk Configuration application, resume with the Full Installation tasks (all of your previous selections are intact).
- The `disklabel` command is accessed from the text-based interface by pressing Ctrl/c at any prompt to bring the system back to a UNIX shell. After making disk changes, restart the Full Installation. Any installation choices you have made up to this point are lost. Disk partition changes take effect immediately even if the installation is canceled. These changes may destroy existing data on the disk.

Because disk partitioning is considered a task that only experienced users should attempt, the Disk Configuration application, tasks that can be performed from the UNIX shell, and how to use the `disklabel` command are documented in the *Installation Guide -- Advanced Topics*.

#### 6.14.4 Should I Install into LSM Volumes?

Whether you choose the default file system layout with one disk or decide to customize the file system layout on more than one disk, you have to decide whether or not to install into LSM volumes.

By selecting the LSM option, LSM automatically is configured and the `/`, `/usr`, and `/var` file systems and swap areas are directly configured within LSM volumes instead of disk partitions. LSM is an integrated, host-based disk storage management tool that protects against data loss, improves disk input/output performance, and customizes the disk configuration. LSM builds virtual disks, called volumes, on top of UNIX system disks. A volume is a special device that contains data used by file systems, databases, or other applications. LSM transparently places a volume between a physical disk and an application, which then operates on the volume rather than on the physical disk. The Full Installation automatically installs the software subsets required by LSM. Section 4.1.3 provides an overview of LSM features if you need more information to make the decision to use it. You need a separate license to use the mirroring and striping features of LSM. Section 6.14.4.1 contains information about selecting a partition to use for the LSM private region.

Installing into LSM volumes is not typical nor required during a Full Installation. But, if you have previous experience using this feature, it is

offered as an option now to eliminate the need to install LSM as a separate task.

---

**Note**

---

Section 6.14.4.2 contains information about the special processing done by a Full Installation on a system that previously was configured to use LSM.

---

#### 6.14.4.1 Selecting a Partition for the LSM Private Region

If LSM is selected, you are required to select a private region partition for each disk being installed. LSM uses these private regions to hold configuration information for the entire system. Multiple private regions on multiple disks provide backup functionality in the unlikely event of a disk failure. The LSM private region requires 2 MB of disk space. As such, the partitions for the LSM private region need to be at least 2 MB in size. Partitions can be larger, but the excess space will not be available for any other use. The recommended disk partition layout provided by the Full Installation interface includes a 2 MB `d` partition on all disks. This partition should be used for the LSM private region whenever possible.

#### 6.14.4.2 Special Processing for Systems Previously Configured with LSM

If you decide to install and configure LSM on a system with an existing LSM configuration, a clean up procedure prepares the system for the new LSM selections. This procedure removes LSM from the following partitions so that your Full Installation selections can be applied:

- Any sliced disk or simple disk partitions that have been selected for the new file systems (`/`, `usr`, `var`, `/usr/i18n`, or swap space).
- Any sliced disk or simple disk partitions that overlap those that were selected for the new file systems.
- Any sliced disk or simple disk partition that contains LSM information with one or more of the standard names that the Full Installation procedure will use to create the new LSM configuration. Table 6–9 lists the standard LSM names.

**Table 6–9: LSM Standard Names**

LSM Component	Standard Names
disk	root01, usr01, var01, swap01, sswap01, i18n01
volume	rootvol, usrvol, varvol, swapvol, sswapvol, i18nv01

**Table 6–9: LSM Standard Names (cont.)**

LSM Component	Standard Names
plex	rootvol-01, usrvol-01, varvol-01, swapvol-01, sswapvol-01, i18nvol-01
subdisk	root01-01, usr01-01, var01-01, swap01-01, sswap01-01, i18n01-01

This clean up procedure preserves all information (volumes, private regions, disks, and so on) from the existing LSM configuration that is not overwritten by your Full Installation selections. All existing LSM information that is not identified in the four LSM components listed in Table 6–9 will be preserved. This cleanup procedure is applied to any LSM partitions, even if you are installing to a different disk than your current boot disk.

If, for any reason, a component cannot be removed, the Full Installation exits to single user mode with an error message. From this point, various commands can be used to interrogate the existing LSM configuration and manually remove the source of the problem so that the installation can be restarted. See Section G.1.1.1 for more information about the commands that can be used to interrogate the existing LSM configuration and how to manually remove the source of the problem.

### 6.14.5 Preserving Data on Previously Used Disks

When you are installing the operating system onto a single disk and you want to preserve data on an existing partition, choose the `Customize File System Layout` option so that the existing partition sizes and offsets will not be changed.

By choosing the custom option, you can select the disk partitions on which the `/`, `/usr`, and `/var` file systems and `swap` areas will be installed. If the partitions you choose contain data or user files, the data is lost (overwritten) when the new file systems are built. Selecting a partition for one of these file systems that overlaps the partitions containing the data to be preserved has the same effect. Also, modifying the partition information in the disk label in such a way that the partitions containing data have their size and offset modified causes the data to be lost. However, if the partitions containing the data are undisturbed, their contents are preserved.

Assuming that the partitions to be preserved were undisturbed during the installation, the data in them can be used on the newly-installed system. If the partition contained a file system, it can be mounted and accessed again. Refer to the `mount(8)` reference page for more information about mounting file systems.

---

**Note**

---

The Full Installation procedure does not update the `/etc/fstab` file with the partitions that contain user data or user file systems. In order to mount these partitions to make the data available to users, you manually add the entries for partitions with preserved data to the new `/etc/fstab` file after the Full Installation is complete.

---

## 6.15 Step 5: Check Your Selections

Except for the system date and time, your system has not been changed in any way unless you have used the `Disk Configuration` application or `disklabel` command to reconfigure disk partitions. This is the last chance you have to verify your disk and software selections. If you are using the graphical user interface, the `Installation Summary` dialog box shown in Figure 6-12 is displayed after you make your disk and file system layout selections. The summary data shown is based on a custom file system layout. You can change any of the information directly from this dialog box. Once you are satisfied with all your selections, click on `Finish`. You will have another opportunity to confirm the start of the installation.

If you are using the text-based interface, you are asked to confirm the file system layout. Use the `history` command to revisit any of your entries and change them.

**Figure 6–12: Installation Summary Dialog Box**

Tru64 UNIX T5.0-23 (Rev. 861.3) Installation Summary

Review this summary of the information you have entered, and make any necessary changes. When everything is correct, press the Finish button to let the installation proceed.

**General Information**

Memory Size: 64 MB      Area: America  
 Firmware Rev.: 7.0      Location: New\_York  
 Host Name: mysystem      Date: 12 / 17 / 1999  
 Change root Password...      Time: 12 : 50

**Software Subsets**

Mandatory Only    Show List...  
 All Software        Show List...  
 Customize         Edit List...  
 Country Support: English (US)

**Kernel Options**

Mandatory Only  
 All Options  
 Customize

**File System Layout**

Use LSM: Yes

	Disk	Partition	Type
root	dsk1	a (128 MB)	AdvFS
/usr	dsk1	g (700 MB)	AdvFS
/var	dsk2	h (981 MB)	UFS
swap1	dsk1	b (196 MB)	
swap2	dsk2	b (196 MB)	

Identify Disk...    Edit Partitions...

**LSM Options**

Disk	Private Region
dsk1	d (2 MB)
dsk2	d (2 MB)

Finish    Reset    Shell Window    Quit    Help

## 6.16 Step 6: Final Confirmation

After verifying all of your selections, you have one more chance to confirm the start of the installation process:



- If you are using the graphical user interface, the confirmation dialog box shown in Figure 6–13 is displayed after you click on Finish in the Summary dialog box. To begin the installation, click on OK here.

**Figure 6–13: Ready to Begin Installation Dialog Box**



- If you are using the text-based interface, press the Return key at the following prompt to start the installation:

```
You have now answered all questions needed to install
Tru64 UNIX on this system. Press Ctrl/c to cancel the
installation; or type "history" to modify your earlier
answers; or press RETURN to proceed with installation:
```

Section 6.16.1 describes how to cancel the installation.

## 6.16.1 Canceling and Restarting the Full Installation

If for any reason you do not want to start the installation at this point, you can cancel it:

- If you are using the graphical interface, click on Cancel in the Ready to Begin dialog box to return to the Installation Summary dialog box. Then, click on Quit in the Summary dialog box to put the system in single-user mode.
- If you are using the text-based interface, press Ctrl/c to put the system in single-user mode.

To restart the Full Installation setup process from single-user mode regardless of the interface you were using, enter the following commands:

```
# cd /
# restart
```

If your system has graphics capabilities but you prefer to restart the installation setup process in the text-based interface, enter the following commands:

```
# cd /
# restart nogui
```

## 6.17 What Happens Next?

Once you click on OK in the `Ready to Begin` dialog box or press the Return key in the text-based interface, the Full Installation process starts making changes to your system. First, file systems are created and software is loaded followed by a system reboot and software configuration phase.

The user interaction at this point in the installation process is:

- Enter the boot commands that are displayed on the screen (Section 6.17.2.) to reboot the system.
- Enter host- or site-specific information or a root password if you have not already done so after the software subsets are loaded and the system reboots. Refer to Section 6.7 if you need help entering this information.
- Insert the CD-ROM labeled *Associated Products Volume 1* just before the software configuration phase to load WLS software if you selected support for additional languages.

### 6.17.1 File System Creation and Software Subset Load Phase

When the actual installation begins, the `/`, `/usr`, `/var`, and `/usr/i18n` file systems and swap areas are created on the disks and partitions you selected. The software subset load phase follows file system creation. A progress bar shows the percent complete of each phase to give you an indication of how far along the process is.

If you are using the text-based interface, messages similar to the following are displayed:

```
Continuing installation...

Applying the selected disklabel on device dsk0

Creating the root file system on device dsk0a

Creating the usr file system on device dsk0g

Creating the var area in the usr file system

Creating the swap1 file system on device dsk0b

The installation procedure will now load a total of 31 software subsets
on your disk partitions. This total includes the following products:

    * 31 Base Operating System subsets

This process will take from 45 to 120 minutes to complete depending on
your distribution media and processor type.

LOADING THE BASE OPERATING SYSTEM SOFTWARE SUBSETS
```

---

**Note**

---

The Full Installation process does not use the default inode density when creating UFS file systems for the `/`, `/usr`, and `/var` file systems. A lower density value is used to maximize available usable file system space.

---

## 6.17.2 System Reboot Phase

The boot commands required to boot from the newly created system disk are displayed on the screen. At the console mode prompt (`>>>`), enter the boot command sequence shown on your screen. *Do not* enter the boot variables that are shown in Example 6–5.

### Example 6–5: Sample Boot Command Sequence

---

Issue the following console commands to set your default bootpath variable and to boot your system disk to multiuser:

```
>>> set boot_osflags A
>>> set bootdef_dev DKA0
>>> boot
```

```
syncing disks... done
CPU 0: Halting... (transferring to monitor)
```

```
?05 HLT INSTR
PC= FFFFFFFC00.0044CA90 PSL= 00000000.00000005
```

---

Write down your system's boot commands here for future reference:

```
>>>
>>>
>>>
```

Software configuration begins after the system boots, which is followed by the kernel build procedure.

## 6.17.3 Software Configuration Phase

Software configuration occurs automatically after your system reboots from the system disk and refers to the process of tailoring the software subsets, setting the host name, root password, and time zone, system tuning, and building a tailored kernel for use by the operating system and by your hardware.

If you did not provide certain essential host- and site-specific information (such as a root password, your system's host name, the date and time, and

location and time zone) earlier in the installation procedure, you will be prompted to enter that information now.

If you chose to install Worldwide Language Support (WLS) software, and you are installing from CD-ROM, you will see the dialog box shown in Figure 6–14 . Remove the CD-ROM labeled *Operating System Volume 1* from the drive and insert the CD-ROM labeled *Associated Products Volume 1*, which contains the WLS software.

If, for any reason, you do not have the second CD-ROM available, you can skip WLS installation at this time, and install it later using the `winstall` script. The *Installation Guide -- Advanced Topics* provides instructions for running the `winstall` script.

---

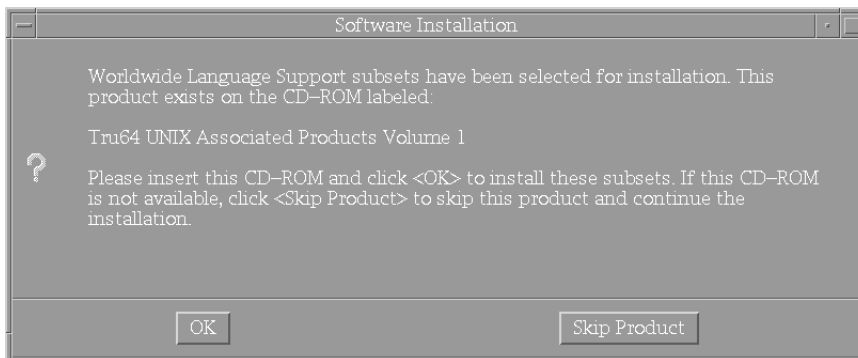
**Note**

---

If you are performing the WLS installation from a RIS server, you are not prompted at all because the WLS software subsets are already available in the RIS area to which your system is registered. Furthermore, the WLS subsets were installed onto the system before the system rebooted.

---

**Figure 6–14: Software Installation Dialog Box**



If you chose the option to select optional kernel components during the Full Installation setup, go to Section 6.18 to select kernel options.

## 6.18 Optional Step 7: Select Kernel Components

If you chose the option to install mandatory kernel components or all kernel components during the Full Installation setup, the kernel is built automatically with the required kernel components for your system configuration. After the kernel build, continue with Section 6.19, which shows you how to log in to your system for the first time. If you want to

build a kernel with optional components later, refer to the `doconfig(8)` reference page.

If you chose the option to customize kernel component selection during the Full Installation setup, a Kernel Option Selection menu is displayed after the system reboots.

The kernel components you see listed on the Kernel Option Selection menu depend on the software subsets that were installed. The installation procedure gives you the option to include or exclude the use of these components in the kernel. If you need to install a kernel component after Full Installation is complete, use the `doconfig(8)` command.

If you need a description of any kernel component, use the `Help` option to display an online description.

The Kernel Option Selection menu is similar to the following:

```
Kernel Option Selection
-----
 1      System V Devices
 2      NTP V3 Kernel Phase Lock Loop (NTP_TIME)
 3      Kernel Breakpoint Debugger (KDEBUG)
 4      Packetfilter driver (PACKETFILTER)
 5      Point-to-Point Protocol (PPP)
 6      STREAMS pkt module (PCKT)
 7      Data Link Bridge (DLPI V2.0 Service Class 1)
 8      X/Open Transport Interface (XTISO, TIMOD, TIRDWR)
 9      ISO 9660 Compact Disc File System (CDFS)
10      Audit Subsystem
11      Alpha CPU performance/profiler (/dev/pfcnt)
12      ACL Subsystem
13      All of the above
14      None of the above
15      Help
16      Display all options again
-----
Enter your choices.
Choices (for example, 1 2 4-6) [14]: 5 9
```

---

**Note**

---

The ISO 9660 Compact Disc File System (CDFS) is a dynamically loadable kernel module. You can build it into the kernel by selecting it now, otherwise, it will be loaded on an as needed basis.

---

After entering your choice of kernel components, the system verifies the list of options you selected and asks you to confirm your choice. For example:

You selected the following kernel options:

```
Point-to-Point Protocol (PPP)
ISO 9660 Compact Disc File System (CDFS)
```

Is that correct? (y/n) [y]:

If the displayed kernel components are the ones you want, enter **y** or press Return to accept the default response. If the displayed kernel components are not the ones you want, enter **n** at the prompt. The Kernel Option Selection menu is redisplayed for you to select kernel components again.

### 6.18.1 Optional Step: Edit the Kernel File if Necessary

After you select and confirm your kernel options, you have the option to edit the kernel file. The kernel configuration file is a text file that defines the components built into the kernel; it is located in the `/usr/sys/conf/SYSTEM_NAME` file.

---

#### Caution

---

Although you are given the option to edit this file, it is not recommended.

---

The *Command and Shell User's Guide* contains a tutorial that teaches you how to use the `ed` text editor (as well as the `vi` text editor).

You will see a prompt similar to the following:

```
Do you want to edit the configuration file? (y/n) [n]:
```

If you enter **n** or press Return (to enter the default response) to skip the edit of the configuration file, the kernel build process begins as shown in Section 6.18.2.

If you enter **y** to edit the file, the following message is displayed:

```
Using 'ed' to edit the configuration file. Press return
when ready, or type 'quit' to skip the editing session:
```

Enter the word **quit** if you want to skip the editing session and start the kernel build process or press the Return key if you want to edit the file. The kernel build begins when you save and quit the editing session.

### 6.18.2 The Kernel Build Phase

When the subsets are configured, the installation procedure invokes the `doconfig` utility to automatically make the device special files needed by the hardware and build the kernel for your system. Messages similar to the following are displayed:

The system will now automatically build a kernel and then reboot. This will take approximately 15 minutes, depending on the processor type.

When the login prompt appears after the system has rebooted, use 'root' as the login name and the SUPERUSER password that was entered during this procedure, to log into the system.

```
*** PERFORMING KERNEL BUILD ***
Working...Fri Aug 25 15:45:24 EST 2000
Working...Fri Aug 25 15:47:24 EST 2000
Working...Fri Aug 25 15:49:25 EST 2000
Working...Fri Aug 25 15:51:26 EST 2000
```

### 6.18.3 If Your System Boots to Single-User Mode

Your system may boot to single-user mode if the `boot_osflags` variable was not set as described in Section 6.17.2. To bring the system to multiuser mode, press `Ctrl/d` at the root prompt (`#`). You are prompted to enter the run level. Four run levels are available:

- 0 specifies the halt state
- S or s specifies single-user mode
- 2 specifies multiuser mode without network services
- 3 specifies multiuser mode with network services

Use the `init` command to boot the system to multiuser mode:

```
# init 3
```

## 6.19 Step 8: Log in to the System as the User root

After the final system reboot, the next step is to log in to the newly installed system as the user `root`. On newly installed systems, the only user name recognized by the system is `root`. When prompted, enter the root password you set earlier.

## 6.20 Step 9: Review Installation Log Files

Before you configure the system for general use, it is recommended that you review the installation log files to make sure the software was installed and configured correctly. If any installation errors occurred, they will be listed in the log files, which are described in Appendix F.

## **6.21 Full Installation Is Done**

After reviewing the installation log files, the Full Installation is done. Go to Chapter 7, which describes the SysMan (System Management) tools that you use to configure the system for general use by yourself and other users.



---

## Configuring the System for General Use

This chapter describes which system management applications to use to set up services on a system after a Full Installation. The following topics are discussed:

- Using the graphical System Setup application to configure and set up your system for general use
- Invoking the System Setup application after the initial system configuration
- Using the text-based System Setup menu to configure and set up your system for general use if your system does not have graphics capabilities
- An overview of additional system management and monitoring tools
- Pointers to system administration and configuration documentation
- Reconstructing the `/etc/fdmns` directory if your system was previously installed with the operating system and was using AdvFS as a file system type
- Enabling realtime preemption after the installation
- Enabling unattended reboots on multiprocessor systems
- Enabling automatic system reboots on single systems

### 7.1 Graphical User Interface: The System Setup Application

To make a newly installed system able to communicate with other systems and users, network services, printers, software licenses, and mail delivery must be configured. Initial system configuration tasks are performed from the Quick Setup application or the Custom Setup application (in the previous releases, this application was called the Checklist).

---

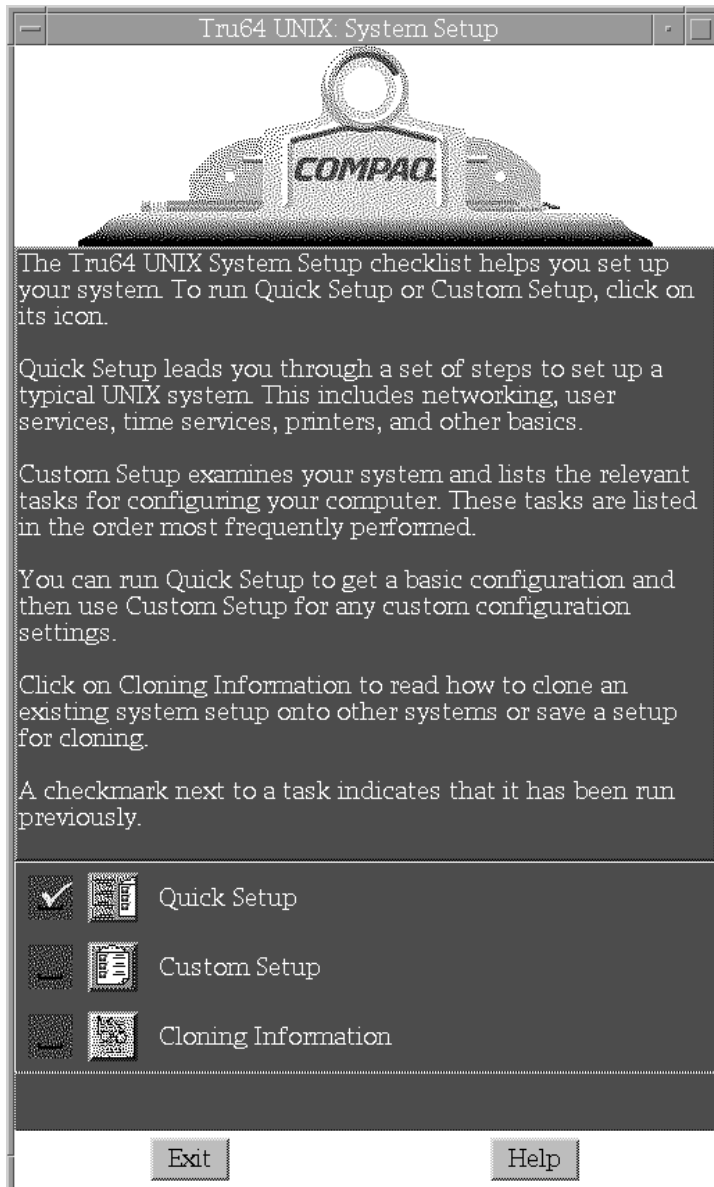
#### Note

Cluster configuration is described in *Cluster Administration*.

---

When you log in to a newly-installed system as the user `root` for the first time, and your system has graphics capabilities, the System Setup window shown in Figure 7-1 is displayed:

**Figure 7–1: The Tru64 UNIX System Setup Window**



The System Setup window is the launch point for the following configuration tools:

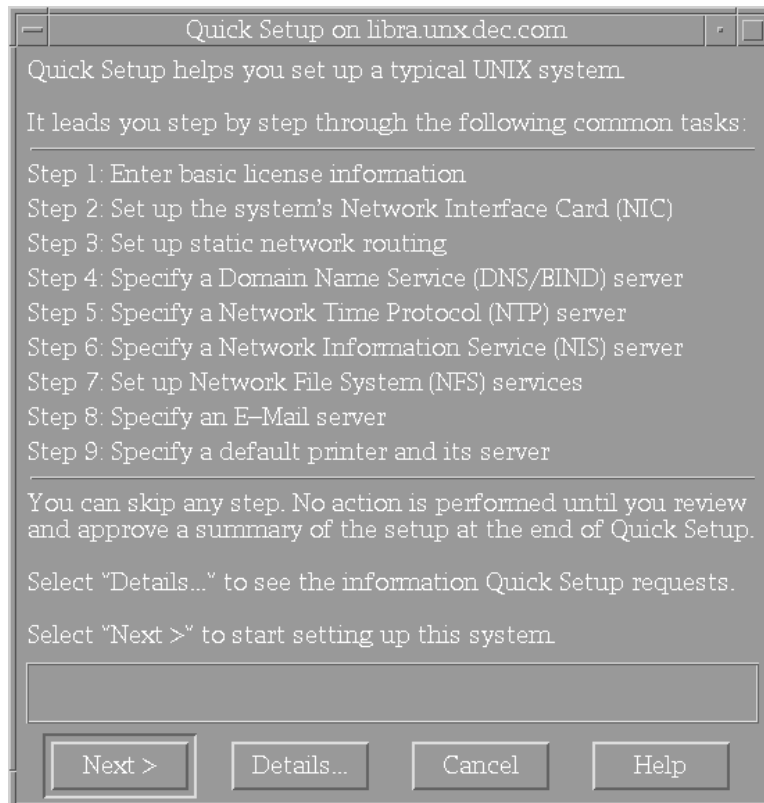
- Quick Setup, which is a way to quickly configure a system with basic services, is described in Section 7.1.1.

- **Custom Setup**, which is a launch point for more advanced configuration tasks, is described in Section 7.1.2.
- **Cloning Information** provides basic information about **Configuration Cloning**. **Configuration Cloning** duplicates the configuration from an already configured system onto one or more systems to eliminate the need to perform configuration tasks at each system. **Configuration Cloning** procedures are documented in the *Installation Guide -- Advanced Topics*.

### 7.1.1 The Quick Setup Application

If your system does not use an asynchronous transfer mode (ATM) adapter for network connections, you quickly can set up your system for general use by using the **Quick Setup** application. As shown in Figure 7-2, **Quick Setup** requires you to answer a few simple questions about basic system configuration items. **Quick Setup** is a task-oriented application that leads you step by step through basic system configuration tasks. If your system configuration needs are not complicated, using **Quick Setup** is a way to quickly get your system up and running on the network. **Quick Setup** also has online help if you need assistance. If you need to configure additional items, you have the option to use the **Custom Setup** application later.

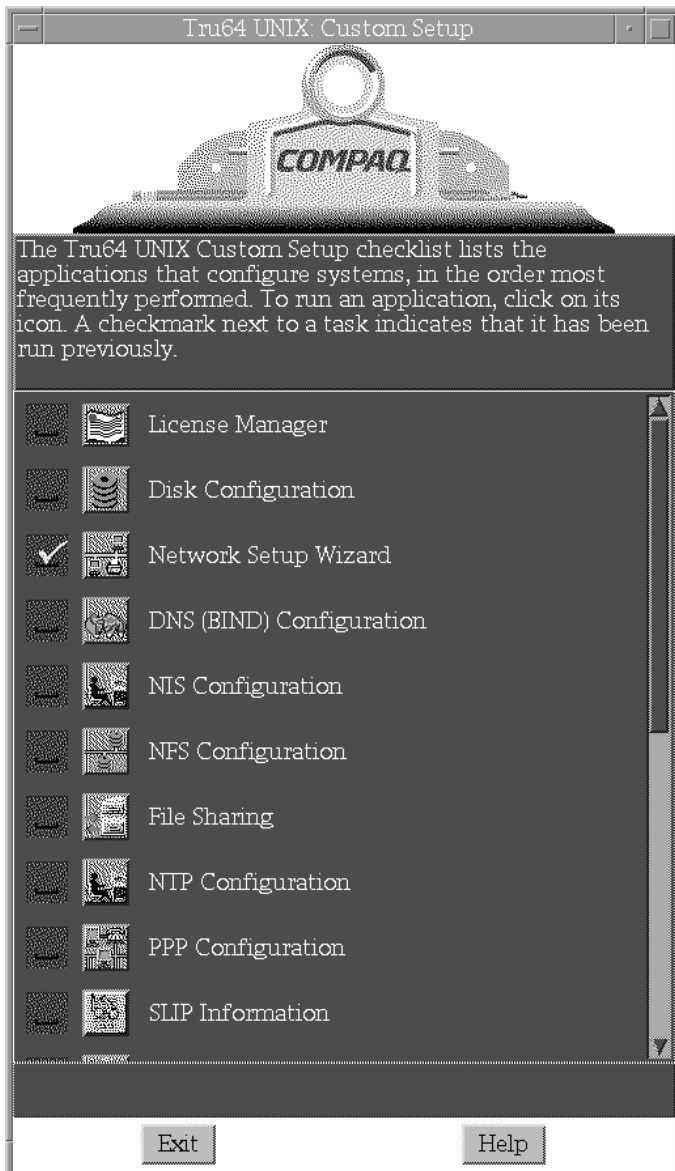
**Figure 7–2: The Quick Setup Application**



### 7.1.2 The Custom Setup Application

The Custom Setup application is shown in Figure 7–3 and is the launch point for additional SysMan configuration applications. Use Custom Setup if your system requires additional configuration or if you want to perform additional system administration tasks such as adding users or groups. In previous releases of the operating system, the Custom Setup application was known as the Checklist.

**Figure 7-3: The Custom Setup Application**



The applications on the Custom Setup application are listed in the approximate order in which it is recommended they be run. For instance, if you plan to connect or add the system to a network, the first task you should perform is to set up the network by using the Network Configuration application followed by the DNS (BIND) Configuration application, NIS - Network Information Service, and the NFS Configuration

application. If you do not want to set up networking, the first task you should perform is to load and register your Product Authorization Keys (PAKs) by using the `License Manager` application.

After you open and exit an application, a check mark appears in the box to the left of the icon. The date and time you last opened an application is shown under the application name. The time stamp does not mean that the application was executed; it only indicates that the application was opened. If an application is *dimmed*, it cannot be opened.

Online help is available for each application by clicking on the `Help` button or `Help` menu in the application. The online help describes the tasks that can be performed from the application and provides a description of all fields, buttons, and menus in each window or dialog box.

## 7.2 Invoking the System Setup Application After the Initial Configuration

Use one of the following methods to invoke the `System Setup` application after the initial system configuration:

- To start the `Tru64 UNIX: System Setup` application from the command line, as superuser or `root`, enter the following command:

```
# /usr/sbin/checklist
```

Either a graphical or text-based interface is displayed depending upon the type of hardware you have.

- To start the `Tru64 UNIX: System Setup` application from the `Common Desktop Environment (CDE)` front panel:
  1. Click on the application manager icon on the `CDE` front panel. The application manager icon looks like an open drawer of a typical filing cabinet.



2. Double click on the `System_Admin` application group icon.
3. Double click on the `Tru64 UNIX: System Setup` application icon.

## 7.3 Text-Based Interface: The System Setup Application

When you log in to a newly-installed system as the user `root` for the first time, and your system does not have graphics capabilities, the `System Setup` window shown in Example 7-1 is displayed.

## Example 7–1: The Text-Based System Setup Application

---

Tru64 UNIX: System Setup

Tru64 UNIX System Setup helps you set up your system. To run Quick Setup, press return, or enter one of the numbered choices and press return.

Quick Setup leads you through a set of steps to set up a typical UNIX system. This includes networking, user services, time services, printers, and other basics.

Custom Setup examines your system and lists the relevant tasks for configuring your computer. These tasks are listed in the order most frequently performed.

You can run Quick Setup to get a basic configuration and then use Custom Setup for any custom configuration settings.

Click on Cloning Information to read how to clone an existing system setup onto other systems or save a setup for cloning.

- 1) Quick Setup
- 2) Custom Setup
- 3) Cloning Information
- 4) Exit

Please enter your selection [1]:

---

Refer to Section 7.1 for a description of the choices on this menu.

## 7.4 System Management and Monitoring

This section provides overview information about the SysMan (**S**ystem **M**anagement) tools that are available to monitor and manage a system after it is installed and configured:

- The **SysMan Menu** provides a menu of system management tasks arranged in a tree-like hierarchy of general categories that cascade down to actual tasks. You can expand or contract a branch to show the subbranches and tasks within a main branch. Selecting a task opens a dialog box for performing the task. There are main branches for Accounts, Mail, Monitoring and Tuning, Networking, Printing, Security, Hardware, Software, Storage, Support and Services, and General Tasks. To start the SysMan Menu from a command prompt, enter the following command:

```
# /usr/sbin/sysman
```

- The **SysMan Station** provides a high profile view and status of a system's physical and logical objects. It is intended to be the central point from which to manage a system. SysMan Station launches other SysMan tools to perform system management tasks. The SysMan Station lets you monitor a system, group of systems, or an entire cluster

and administer system resources. It can run on a standard Java capable display (such as a UNIX workstation) or within a PC's browser, or it can be downloaded and run directly on a PC. To start the SysMan Station from a command prompt, enter the following command:

```
# /usr/sbin/sysman -station
```

- The **Event Manager** provides a single point of focus for the multiple channels through which system components report event and status information by combining events from all sources into a single event stream. You can either monitor the combined stream in realtime or view historical events retrieved from storage. EVM's viewing facilities include a graphical event viewer, which is integrated with the SysMan application suite, and a full set of command line utilities, which allow events to be filtered, sorted, and formatted in a variety of ways. Enter the following command to start the Event Manager from the command line:

```
# /usr/sbin/sysman event_viewer
```

- **Compaq Insight Manager** is a web based management utility that enables you to look across a heterogeneous computing services environment and access information about any entity connected to the network. Entities are referred to as devices and can be computer systems, networked printers, or network components such as routers. You can obtain information about the configuration of systems and their components or peripherals and in some cases, perform certain administrative tasks. For example, systems can be configured to enable remote booting and Insight Manager enables you to boot remote systems from their own local system. Insight Manager can facilitate other administrative tasks such as asset management, asset security, workload management, and event management.

You can activate these Web browsing features from a dedicated HTTP port or from the Compaq Insight Manager CIM32 or CIMXE Management Consoles running on Compaq NT servers. Compaq Management Agents for Tru64 UNIX includes SNMP based subagents and WBEM capabilities to present SNMP data in a format viewable by a Web browser. It provides a rich view of the data using HTML 2.0 and JavaScript in the form of Web pages.

Compaq Management Agents for Tru64 UNIX and other systems are also distributed on the Compaq Management CD, which can be obtained by subscription. For more information, see the following web site:

```
http://www.compaq.com/products/servers/SmartStart/ss\_subscription.html
```

Section 7.5 provides pointers to system administration and configuration documents.



## 7.5 System Administration and Configuration Documents

If you need more information about configuring, administering, or monitoring your system, read the relevant sections of these manuals in the documentation set:

- *Network Administration* provides information about configuring and administering a network.
- *System Administration* provides information about system administration tasks such as configuring printers, file system management, adding user accounts, backing up and restoring files, shutting down the system, event management, using the Insight Manager, SysMan invocation, and other topics pertaining to system administration.
- *TruCluster Server Software Installation* describes cluster-specific installation tasks.
- *TruCluster Server Cluster Administration* describes how to administer and manage a cluster.
- *Software License Management* provides information about loading and registering license PAKs.
- *AdvFS Administration* provides information about Advanced File System (AdvFS) administration.
- *Logical Storage Manager* provides information about administering the Logical Storage Manager (LSM).
- *System Configuration and Tuning* provides information about tuning the kernel to achieve optimum system performance.

To view the documentation set on line on a system that is capable of graphical display, mount the documentation CD-ROM as described in Chapter 8, then use Netscape or Acrobat Reader to view the manuals. If your system does not have online viewing capabilities, use the order sheet in the back of this manual or contact your support representative to order a printed copy of the documentation set.

## 7.6 Reconstructing the /etc/fdmns Directory

If your system was running a previous version of the operating system and was using the Advanced File System (AdvFS) type, the Full Installation overwrote the `/etc/fdmns` directory, which contained important AdvFS configuration data.

To reconstruct this directory, you must run the `advscan` utility with the `-r` flag for each disk on the system. Because of the device naming conventions that were introduced in Version 5.0, simply restoring the directory from

a backup copy is not sufficient. Refer to *AdvFS Administration* for more information about using the `advscan` utility.

## 7.7 Enabling Realtime Preemption

The operating system kernel provides options to enhance the performance of realtime applications conforming to POSIX 1003.1b-1993 (formerly 1003.4 Draft 14). The realtime kernel makes it possible for the operating system to guarantee that an application has access to resources in a timely and predictable manner.

The realtime kernel that supports kernel preemption was previously an option during an installation. Now, the POSIX 1003.1b portions are included in the kernel automatically and a separate kernel is not needed. Preemption capabilities are disabled by default but can be selected and enabled when the kernel is configured and built.

To enable realtime preemption capabilities, follow this procedure to modify the `/etc/sysconfigtab` file:

1. Use the text editor of your choice to add the following lines to a temporary file (such as `/tmp/stanza`):

```
generic:
           rt_preempt_opt=1
```

2. Use the `sysconfigdb` command to merge the temporary file with the existing `/etc/sysconfigtab` file:

```
# sysconfigdb -m -t /etc/sysconfigtab -f /tmp/stanza generic
```

---

### Note

---

Never use a text editor to directly modify the `/etc/sysconfigtab` file.

---

## 7.8 Enabling Unattended Reboots on Multiprocessor Systems

To reduce system down time due to a processor failure on a multiprocessor system, an unattended reboot feature is available for multiprocessor platforms.

To enable unattended reboot functionality, log in as the user `root` and set the following console variables:

```
# consvar -s boot_osflags a
# consvar -s boot_reset off
# consvar -s auto_action restart
# consvar -a
```

When processor failures are detected on a multiprocessor platform, the system marks the faulting processor as failed, and the entire system is rebooted without any operator intervention. The faulting processor will not be restarted when the reboot occurs. To restart the faulting processor, corrective action must be taken. The system will not try to restart the failed processor until the power has been recycled on the system or the console `init` command is issued at the console prompt (`>>>`).

## 7.9 Enabling Automatic Reboot on Single Systems

If you want your system to automatically reboot after a processor or power failure, shut down the system to console mode and set the following console variable:

```
# set auto_action restart
```

This console variable should be valid on most system types. If this variable is not valid for your system type, refer to your hardware owner's guide for a list of supported console environment variables.



---

## Using Online Documentation

In addition to online help, which is already integrated into many applications, all other documentation associated with the operating system, including books and reference pages, can be viewed on line from the CD-ROM labeled *Documentation Volume 1*.

The following topics are discussed in this chapter:

- An overview of documentation file formats and online viewers
- Mounting the Documentation CD-ROM
- Using the Netscape Navigator application to view HTML versions of the online documentation set
- Netscape application integration
- Installing the Adobe Acrobat Reader application
- Using the Adobe Acrobat Reader application to view PDF versions of the documentation
- Copying the documentation set files to your system's hard disk

### 8.1 Supported Documentation Formats and Online Viewers

The online documentation set is available in both Hypertext Markup Language (HTML) and Portable Document Format (PDF) versions. Two viewers are supported:

- You can use the Netscape Navigator application to view the HTML or PDF versions of the documentation. This version of the operating system is shipped with Netscape Communicator 4.7, which includes Netscape Navigator. The Netscape software subset is installed automatically if the installation process detects a graphics card on your system.

After installing the operating system, you can invoke Netscape through the CDE front panel or from the command line in a terminal emulator window. Detailed help for Netscape is available through the Help menu.

- You can use the Adobe Acrobat Reader application to view PDF versions of the documentation.

After installing the operating system, you can invoke Acrobat Reader either as a Netscape helper application or from the command line in a

terminal emulator window. Detailed help for Acrobat Reader is available through the Help menu.

Refer to the *Adobe Acrobat Reader Online Guide* for information about setting up Netscape Navigator to view PDF files. You can access this document from the Acrobat Reader Help menu.

## 8.2 Mounting the Documentation CD-ROM

The operating system documentation is shipped on the CD-ROM labeled *Documentation Volume 1*. Mount instructions also are included on the inside of the CD-ROM jacket.

Follow these steps to mount the CD-ROM so that you can view the online documentation set with Netscape Navigator or Acrobat Reader:

1. Log in as `root` or use the `su` command to gain `root` privileges.
2. Insert the CD-ROM into your system's CD-ROM drive.
3. Use the following command to mount the CD-ROM on `/usr/share/doclib/online` if you have only one CD-ROM attached to your system:

```
# mount -r /dev/disk/cdrom0c /usr/share/doclib/online
```

If you have more than one CD-ROM device, enter a command similar to the following to determine the CD-ROM devices connected to your system. Then, decide which CD-ROM device you want to use.

```
# ls /dev/disk/cdrom*c  
/dev/disk/cdrom0c  
/dev/disk/cdrom1c
```

## 8.3 Viewing Online Documents with Netscape

Follow these steps to view the online documentation set with Netscape Navigator:

1. Mount the Documentation CD-ROM as described in Section 8.2.
2. Start Netscape Navigator by using one of the following methods:
  - From the CDE desktop:
    - a. Click on the arrow above the Text Editor icon on the CDE Front Panel to display the Personal Applications subpanel.
    - b. Click on the Netscape icon.
  - Enter the following command to start Netscape Navigator from the command line in the background:

```
# /usr/bin/X11/net scape &
```

Refer to the `net scape(1)` reference page for more information.

3. Click on the **Documentation** link to go to the Documentation home page.
4. Documentation categories are listed in the frame down the left side of the page. Click on a category to display links to HTML and PDF versions of the individual books in that category.

Section 8.5 describes how to install Acrobat Reader. The *Adobe Acrobat Reader Online Guide*, available from the Acrobat Reader Help menu, provides information about setting up Netscape Navigator to view PDF files.

## 8.4 Netscape Application Integration

The following information is provided to help you when you use Netscape applications on this operating system:

- A sample resource defaults file for Netscape Communicator is located in the `/usr/doc/net scape/Net scape.ad` file. Comments within this file indicate possible settings for each resource. This file is provided for informational purposes and need not be installed.
- The file `/usr/bin/X11/net scape` is actually a shell script that performs the following actions:
  - Creates a Communicator user configuration directory if `$HOME/.net scape` does not already exist.
  - Copies the Navigator preferences file from `/usr/doc/net scape/default-net scape-preferences` to `$HOME/.net scape/preferences.js` if it does not already exist in the `$HOME` directory.
  - Sets the `MOZILLA_HOME` environment variable to point to the Communicator installation directory `/usr/lib/net scape`. The Communicator Java class files, nethelp files, plugins, registry, and others are all installed under this directory. See the `/usr/lib/net scape/README` file for more information on `MOZILLA_HOME` and other environment variables.
  - Invokes the `/usr/bin/X11/real-net scape` file, which is the actual Communicator binary.

This information may be important to know if you should download newer copies of Navigator from other sources (for example, the Netscape web site) and install the files from those kits over the links in `$HOME/.net scape`. If you want to use the previous version, you need to remove these files so that the `/usr/bin/X11/net scape` script is

able to recreate the symbolic links described previously that point to the older versions of these files.

### 8.4.1 Mosaic-to-Netscape Bookmark Conversion

If Mosaic was your previous browser, you need to convert your Mosaic hotlist files to equivalent Netscape Communicator bookmark files. To accomplish this conversion, invoke the shell script `/usr/doc/netcape/hot-convert.sh` with no arguments.

It is recommended that you define the Global Types File and Global Mailcap File used by Netscape as follows:

- Global Types File: `/usr/lib/netcape/mime.types`
- Global Mailcap File: `/usr/lib/netcape/mailcap`

These files allow Netscape to invoke the proper helper applications for viewing file types not directly viewable in Netscape. You can do this by selecting Preferences... from the Netscape Options menu. Then select Helper Applications and enter the correct values.

For more information about using Netscape, refer to the *Netscape Navigator Online Handbook*, which is available by clicking on the link to Other documentation on the home page.

## 8.5 Installing Acrobat Reader

The PDF versions of the online documents are best viewed by using Acrobat Reader as a Netscape Navigator helper application. This section tells you how to install Acrobat Reader on your system.

---

#### Note

---

Acrobat Reader requires 16 MB of free disk space. Use the `df` command to ensure that the file system where you install Acrobat Reader has sufficient space before beginning this installation.

---

Follow these steps to install Acrobat Reader on your system:

1. Log in as `root` or use the `su` command to gain `root` privileges.
2. Mount the Documentation CD-ROM as described in Section 8.2.
3. Change to this directory:  

```
# cd /usr/share/doc/lib/online/ACROREAD
```
4. View the following file to find the name of the directory that contains the Tru64 UNIX version of Acrobat Reader:



```
# more 00README.TXT
```

5. Change to the directory that contains the Tru64 UNIX version of Acrobat Reader:

```
# cd tru64_unix_directory
```

6. View the following file for information about uncompressing the installation file and running the installation script:

```
# more 00README.TXT
```

7. Follow the instructions in the 00README.TXT file to uncompress the installation file and run the installation script.
8. After you read the license agreement, enter `accept` to accept the license terms and continue.
9. Select an installation directory for Acrobat Reader. The default is `/usr/local/Acrobat3`. If you accept this default and the directory does not exist, it is created automatically.

The installation completes and you see the command line prompt. Section 8.6 describes how to start and use Acrobat Reader once it is installed.

The *Adobe Acrobat Reader Online Guide*, available from the Acrobat Reader Help menu, provides information about setting up Netscape Navigator to view PDF files.

## 8.6 Viewing Online Documents with Acrobat Reader

The PDF versions of the online documents are best viewed by using Acrobat Reader as a Netscape Navigator helper application. You can, however, view them directly with Acrobat Reader. You should review the 00README.TXT file in the ACRO\_DUX and ACRO\_SUP subdirectories under the `/usr/share/doclib/online/DOCS` directory. These files map file names to document names so that you can locate specific documents.

Follow these steps to view the online documentation set with Acrobat Reader:

1. Mount the documentation CD-ROM as described in Section 8.2.
2. Install Acrobat Reader as described in Section 8.5.
3. Run Acrobat Reader in the background:

```
# /usr/local/Acrobat3/bin/acroread &
```

Refer to the *Adobe Acrobat Reader Online Guide*, available from the Help menu, for information on how to use Acrobat Reader.

4. Select `Open . . .` from the File menu to open the Open dialog box, where you can select a PDF file.

The PDF documents are in the `/usr/share/doclib/online/DOCS` directory on the documentation CD-ROM.

- The `ACRO_DUX` subdirectory contains the base operating system documentation set.
- The `ACRO_SUP` subdirectory contains the supplementary documentation set.

The `00README.TXT` file in both subdirectories maps file names to document names so that you can locate specific documents. You cannot use Acrobat Reader to view text files. To view this file you might consider using the `more` command. For example:

```
# more /usr/share/doclib/online/DOCS/ACRO_DUX/00README.TXT
```

## 8.7 Copying Online Documentation to Disk

Instead of reading the online documentation set from the CD-ROM, you can copy the documentation files to a disk on your system. Copying the documentation files to a disk eliminates the need to keep the CD-ROM permanently mounted. The entire set of online documentation files consumes about 218 MB of disk space in the `/usr` file system.

Follow these procedures to copy the documentation files to a disk on your system. Use the same directories shown in the examples so you will not have to modify library bookshelf files.

1. Log in as `root` or use the `su` command to gain `root` privileges.
2. Insert the Documentation CD-ROM into the drive (assume the CD-ROM device name is `/dev/disk/cdrom0c`).
3. Mount the CD-ROM on `/mnt`:  

```
# mount -r /dev/disk/cdrom0c /mnt
```
4. Enter commands similar to the following examples to copy the online documents from the CD-ROM to the right subdirectories in the `/usr/share/doclib/online/DOCS` directory. This example illustrates the process with the CD-ROM mounted on the `/mnt` directory.

---

### Note

---

The backslashes (`\`) in the following examples represent line continuation characters; do not enter them on the command line.

---

- To copy the documentation HTML files, enter the following commands:

```
# cd /mnt/DOCS/HTML
# tar chpvf - . | \
(cd /usr/share/doclib/online/DOCS/HTML;tar xvpf -)
```

The documentation HTML files consume about 86 MB of disk space.

- To copy the base documentation PDF files, enter the following commands:

```
# cd /mnt/DOCS/ACRO_DUX
# tar chpvf - . | \
(cd /usr/share/doclib/online/DOCS/ACRO_DUX;tar xvpf -)
```

The documentation PDF files consume about 29 MB of disk space.

- To copy the supplemental documentation set PDF files, enter the following commands:

```
# cd /mnt/DOCS/ACRO_SUP
# tar chpvf - . | \
(cd /usr/share/doclib/online/DOCS/ACRO_SUP;tar xvpf -)
```

The supplemental documentation set PDF files consume about 8 MB of disk space.

5. Unmount the CD-ROM:

```
# cd /
# umount /mnt
```

Follow the instructions in Section 8.3 if you want to start Netscape Navigator or Section 8.6 if you want to start Acrobat Reader.



---

## Software Management

This chapter discusses the following topics:

- An overview of software management tools
- Using the SysMan Menu to perform software management tasks
- Using the `setld` utility to perform software management tasks
- A description of the command line options supported by the `setld` utility and tasks that can be performed, including:
  - Listing installed software
  - Displaying a list of files within a software subset
  - Removing software subsets from a single system
  - Removing software subsets from a cluster
  - Installing optional software subsets on a single system
  - Installing optional software subsets on a cluster
  - Recovering from software subset load and delete failures on a cluster
- Rebuilding the kernel after installing kernel build environment software subsets

### 9.1 Software Management Overview

Optional operating system software subsets, worldwide language support (WLS) software subsets, and layered product software subsets can be installed or removed from a system after a Full or Update Installation.

Software subsets can be installed from any CD-ROM shipped with the operating system, a Remote Installation Services (RIS) server, a mounted disk or file system, or a third-party software CD-ROM.

This chapter describes the two software management tools that can be used to perform software management tasks: the SysMan Menu and the `setld` utility. Both tools provide the same features. The difference between the two is that `setld` is strictly a command line utility, while the SysMan Menu can be invoked and run in three environments: X, text-based, or the Internet.

This chapter focuses more on the `setld` command line utility because the SysMan Menu software management tasks have an online help system, which is available if you need assistance.

## 9.2 Software Management from the SysMan Menu

The SysMan Menu is a menu of system management tasks, which is organized in a tree-like hierarchy with main branches of general functionality. Selecting a leaf invokes a task, which opens a dialog box for performing the task.

Depending on the capabilities of your display device, the SysMan Menu provides either a graphical or text-based interface. The SysMan Menu can be invoked from the command line or from the CDE Application Manager if your system is running the CDE desktop.

Invoke the SysMan Menu from the command line by entering the following command:

```
# /usr/sbin/sysman &
```

From the SysMan Menu, expand the **Software** and **Installation** branches to view the software management tasks as shown in Figure 9-1.

---

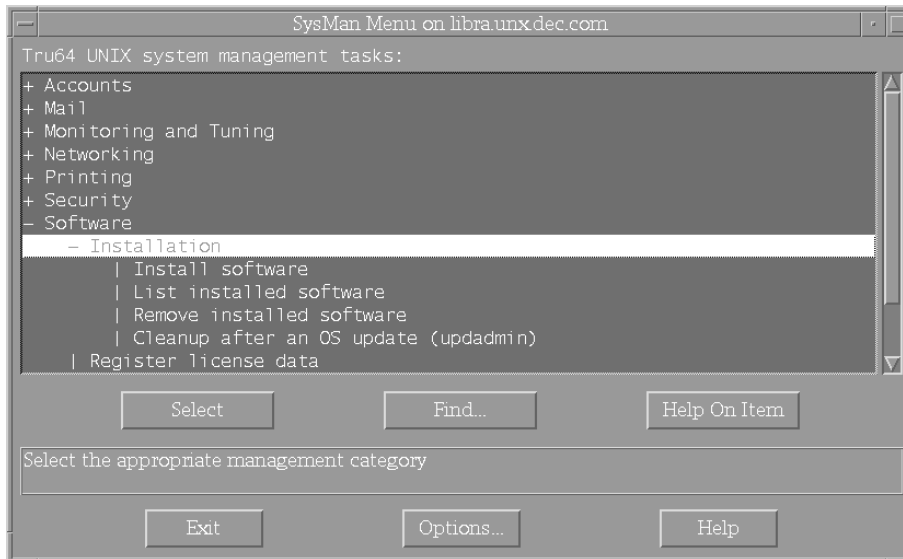
### Note

---

The SysMan Menu is not supported for software load and delete operations on clusters. Use the `setld` utility to install or remove software subsets on a cluster.

---

**Figure 9–1: SysMan Menu: Expanded Software and Installation Branches**



The following is a brief description of each software management task shown in Figure 9–1:

- **Install software**  
Installs additional optional software subsets after a Full or Update Installation of the operating system. Supported distribution media includes CD-ROM, RIS server, or mounted disk or file system.
- **List installed software**  
Lists the software subsets that are installed and displays a list of the system files contained within a particular software subset.
- **Remove installed software**  
Removes software already installed on the system. Dependencies between software subsets automatically are recognized and reported.
- **Cleanup after an OS update**  
Invokes the Update Administration Cleanup utility, which is used to remove the backup files created by an Update Installation. This utility is described in Section 3.10.

Each software management task has online help that is available by selecting **Help** from within the task. The online help describes the functions that can be performed as well as a detailed description of all windows, dialog boxes, and fields that require entries.

## 9.3 Using the setld Utility

The `setld` command line utility lets you add, list, or remove software subsets after a Full or Update Installation.

The syntax of the `setld` utility is:

```
setld [-D root-path] -c subset-id message
```

```
setld [-D root-path] -d [-f] subset-id [ subset-id...]
```

```
setld [-D root-path] -i [ subset-id [ subset-id...]]
```

```
setld [-D root-path] -l location [ subset-id [ subset-id...]]
```

```
setld [-D root-path] -v subset-id [ subset-id...]
```

Table 9–1 provides a brief description of the options for the `setld` utility.

**Table 9–1: Options for the setld Utility**

Option	Description
-D	In conjunction with any other option, specifies an alternate root directory. For example:  <pre># setld -D /usr/doctools -i</pre> The directory specified must be the root directory of an entire file system hierarchy. Do not attempt to use this option to place software in a directory that is not a system root.
-c	Runs the configuration phase of the named software subset's subset control program (SCP). Refer to the documents supplied by your software vendor for the command syntax. For example:  <pre># setld -c DNABASE100 INSTALL</pre>
-d	Deletes the named software subset or software subsets. For example:  <pre># setld -d OSFMANOS510 OSFMANOP510</pre>
-f	Forces the continuation of a delete operation despite receiving errors from a subset control program.
-h	Displays command line usage examples.
-i	Displays a list of software subsets and their installation status. If a software subset is named, displays a list of that software subset's contents. For example:  <pre># setld -i OSFMANOS510</pre>



**Table 9–1: Options for the setld Utility (cont.)**

Option	Description
-l	Loads the software kits that are in the specified location; if software subsets are specified, only the named software subsets are installed. For example:  # setld -l /mnt/ALPHA/BASE DNABASE100
-v	Runs an Installation Verification Procedure (IVP) for the named software subset. For example:  # setld -v OSFMANOS510  To verify the files of a specific subset, use the fverify command. The fverify command reports missing files and inconsistencies in file size, checksum, user ID, group ID, permissions, and file type. Refer to the fverify(8) reference page for more information.

## 9.4 Listing Installed Software

You can use the `setld` utility to list the software subsets recognized by your system, showing the status (installed, incomplete, or not installed) of each software subset.

Enter the following command to list installed software:

```
# /usr/sbin/setld -i
Subset      Status      Description
-----
OSFACCT510      System Accounting Utilities (System Administration)
OSFBASE510      installed   Base System (- Required -)
OSFBIN510       installed   Standard Kernel Objects (Kernel Build Environment)
:
```

## 9.5 Listing Files Contained in a Subset

If you use the `-i` option and specify a software subset, the `setld` utility displays a list of the files in the specified software subset. This is useful if you want to determine which software subset you need to reload or delete if a particular file is damaged or deleted.

The following command displays the files in the `OSFMANOS510` software subset:

```
# /usr/sbin/setld -i OSFMANOS510
./usr/share/man/.OSFMANOS.hardlinks
./usr/share/man/.OSFMANOS.whatis
./usr/share/man/man1/MH.1.gz
:
```

## 9.6 Deleting Software Subsets from a Single System

Deleting a software subset requires that you know the subset name (OSFACCT510 for example). Refer to Appendix C for the name and description of each software subset. To delete a software subset, log in as `root`, and use the `setld -d` command with the following syntax:

```
/usr/sbin/setld [-D root_path] -d [-f] [subset-id [subset-id...]]
```

If you attempt to delete a software subset on which another subset depends, a message similar to the following is displayed:

```
# setld -d OSFDCMT510

The following subsets need "Doc. Preparation Tools" (OSFDCMT510)
to operate correctly:

  Ref Pages: CDE Development (OSFCDEMANOP510)
  Ref Pages: CDE Admin/User (OSFCDEMANOS510)
  Doc. Preparation Tools Extensions (OSFDCMTEXT510)
  Ref Pages: Programming (OSFMANOP510)
  Ref Pages: Admin/User (OSFMANOS510)
  Ref Pages: Windows Programming (OSFMANWOP510)
  Ref Pages: Windows Admin/User (OSFMANWOS510)

Are you sure you wish to delete "Doc. Preparation Tools"
(OSFDCMT510)? (y/n): y

Deleting "Doc. Preparation Tools" (OSFDCMT510).
#
```

In the previous example, the reference page software subsets depend on the `Doc. Preparation Tools (OSFDCMT510)` subset in order to operate properly. If you do not delete the dependent subsets, the dependent subsets will not function properly.

## 9.7 Deleting Software Subsets from a Cluster

Deleting one or more software subsets from a cluster is no different than deleting one or more software subsets from a single system.

To delete a software subset from a cluster, log in as `root` to any member in the cluster, and use the `setld -d` command with the following syntax:

```
/usr/sbin/setld -d [subset-id [subset-id...]]
```

The `setld -d` command can be invoked from any member in the cluster, and the delete operation takes place across all cluster members. If a cluster member is down at the time of a subset deletion, the delete operation takes place as soon as the cluster member comes back online.

Subset deletion messages appear on the member on which the operation was initiated.

For a record of the software subset deletion activity for each cluster member, review the log file located at `/var/adm/smlogs/setld.log` on each cluster member.

## 9.8 Installing Software Subsets on a Single System

This section describes how to install software subsets from a specified location. Refer to Appendix C for the name and description of all software subsets. To install a software subset, log in as `root`, and use the `setld -l` command with the following syntax:

```
/usr/sbin/setld [-D root_path] -l location [subset-id [subset-id..]]
```

The *location* parameter specifies the location of the software subset that you want to install. The following are valid locations:

- *ris\_server*: specifies the name of the remote host (RIS server) appended with a colon (:).
- *directory* specifies the disk distribution directory. The directory specified must be the parent of the `instctrl` directory.

The *subset-id* variable specifies the name of the software subset. If you do not specify a *subset-id* variable, a list of software subsets is displayed, which lets you choose the software subsets to install. If you specify one or more *subset-id* variables, only those software subsets are installed.

Use the following procedure to install software subsets from a CD-ROM. The distribution path shown in the following examples is for the base operating system CD-ROM. For other distribution kits, refer to the document supplied by your software vendor.

1. Insert the CD-ROM into the disc drive.
2. As superuser or `root` create a directory to be the mount point for the CD-ROM. This example creates a directory called `/cdrom`:

```
# mkdir /cdrom
```

3. Mount the CD-ROM on `/cdrom`. Refer to Appendix B if you do not know the CD-ROM device name. The following example assumes a single CD-ROM device is attached to the system:

```
# mount -r /dev/disk/cdrom0c /cdrom
```

After mounting the CD-ROM, you can change to the `/cdrom` (`cd /cdrom`) directory to view the directories located on the CD-ROM.

4. Enter a command similar to the following to install the base operating system software subsets:

```
# setld -l /cdrom/ALPHA/BASE
```

---

**Note**

---

If you are using a RIS server as the source of the software, make sure your system is registered as a client of the RIS server, then enter a command similar to the following:

```
# setld -l ris_server_name:
```

---

5. The `setld` utility displays a numbered list of software subset descriptions and prompts you to enter the number of the software subsets you want to install.

Enter the number or numbers associated with the software subsets you want to install. There may be more software subsets presented in the menu than can be displayed on a single screen. You either can select software subsets in each screen or select them all together on the last screen. If you select software subsets as each screen is displayed, all your choices are presented for you to confirm on the final screen. You also can change your choices or redisplay the software subset options.

Only the software subsets not yet installed on your system are displayed. The software subset selection list looks similar to the following:

The subsets listed below are optional:

There may be more optional subsets than can be presented on a single screen. If this is the case, you can choose subsets screen by screen or all at once on the last screen. All of the choices you make will be collected for your confirmation before any subsets are installed.

- General Applications :
  - 1) Additional Terminfo databases
  - 2) Computer Aided System Tutor
  - 3) DOS tools
  - 4) Local Area Transport (LAT)
  - 5) Perl Runtime
  - 6) UNIX(tm) SVID2 Compatibility
  - 7) UNIX(tm) to UNIX(tm) Copy Facility
- Kernel Build Environment :
  - 8) Logical Storage Manager Kernel Modules
  - 9) POLYCTR advfs Kernel Modules
- Kernel Software Development :
  - 10) Hardware Kernel Objects
  - 11) POLYCTR advfs Kernel Objects
  - 12) Standard Kernel Objects
- Mail Applications :
  - 13) DECwindows Mail Interface
  - 14) RAND Corp. Mail Handler (MH)
- Network-Server/Communications :

```

15) ATM Commands
16) Additional Networking Services
17) Dataless Management Services
18) Remote Installation Service

- Printing Environment :

    19) Adobe Font Metric Files

--- MORE TO FOLLOW ---
Enter your choices or press RETURN to display the next screen.

Estimated free disk space(MB) in root:62.3 usr:405.6

Choices (for example, 1 2 4-6): 11

```

**At the bottom of each screen, the disk space available in the /, /usr, var, and i18n file systems is shown. As you select additional subsets, the amount of free disk space is reduced accordingly.**

**If you choose a subset that depends on another subset to be installed, the setld utility automatically selects the dependent subset or subsets. For example, if you choose POLYCTR advfs Kernel Objects, the following is displayed:**

```

The chosen subset(s) require one or more additional subset(s)
which will be loaded automatically:

```

```

* 9 POLYCTR advfs Kernel Modules      (OSFADVFSBIN510)

```

```

- Software Development :

    20) CDA(tm) Software Development
    21) CDA(tm) for X/Motif Development
    22) CDE Software Development and Programming Examples
    23) GNU Revision Control System
    24) Ladebug Debugger Version 4.0-43
    25) Ladebug Debugger Version 4.0-43 Release Notes
    26) Ladebug Debugger graphical user interface
    27) Ladebug Debugger remote server
    28) Programming Examples
    29) Software Development Desktop Environment
    30) Software Development Tools and Utilities
    31) Source Code Control System
    32) Standard Header Files
    33) Standard Programmer Commands
    34) Static Libraries
    35) X Window and X/Motif Header Files
    36) X Window and X/Motif Programming Examples
    37) X Window and X/Motif Software Development
    38) X Window and X/Motif Static Libraries

- Supplemental Documentation :

    39) XIE Version 5 Online Documentation

- System Administration :

    40) ATM Configuration Application
    41) Advanced File System Daemon
    42) Advanced File System Graphical User Interface

```

```
43) C2-Security
44) C2-Security GUI

--- MORE TO FOLLOW ---

Add to your choices or press RETURN to display the next screen.

Estimated free disk space(MB) in root:61.2 usr:403.9

Choices (for example, 1 2 4-6): 11 40
```

**6. After you enter all your choices, the following confirmation message is displayed:**

```
You are installing the following optional subsets:

- Kernel Build Environment :
  POLYCTR advfs Kernel Modules

- Kernel Software Development :
  POLYCTR advfs Kernel Objects

- System Administration :
  ATM Configuration Application
  POLYCTR advfs

Estimated free disk space(MB) in root:56.6 usr:402.8

Is this correct? (y/n): y
```

**7. After you confirm your choices, messages similar to the following are displayed as the software subsets are loaded and configured:**

```
Checking file system space required to install selected subsets:

File system space checked OK.

4 subset(s) will be installed.

Loading subset 1 of 4 ...

POLYCTR advfs Kernel Modules
  Copying from risserver1 (inet)
  Verifying

Loading subset 2 of 4 ...

POLYCTR advfs
  Copying from risserver1 (inet)
  Working....Fri Aug 25 14:48:02 EST 2000
  Verifying

Loading subset 3 of 4 ...

ATM Configuration Application
  Copying from risserver1 (inet)
  Verifying

Loading subset 4 of 4 ...
```

```

POLYCTR advfs Kernel Objects
  Copying from rissserver1 (inet)
    Working....Fri Aug 25 14:48:34 EST 2000
  Verifying

4 of 4 subset(s) installed successfully.

Configuring "POLYCTR advfs Kernel Modules" (OSFADVFSBIN510)

Configuring "POLYCTR advfs" (OSFADVFS510)

Configuring "ATM Configuration Application" (OSFATMGUI510)

Configuring "POLYCTR advfs Kernel Objects" (OSFADVFSBINOBJECT510)

```

8. If you are installing from CD-ROM, unmount the CD-ROM after the software subsets are installed:

```

# cd/
# umount /dev/disk/cdrom0c

```

## 9.9 Installing Optional Software Subsets on a Cluster

Installing one or more optional software subsets onto a cluster is no different than installing one or more software subsets onto a single system.

To install optional software subsets onto a cluster, log in as `root` to any member in the cluster, and follow the step-by-step instructions for mounting the distribution media and invoking `setld` as shown in Section 9.8. The software load takes place across all cluster members. If a cluster member is down at the time of a subset load, the load information is stored, and the load operation takes place as soon as the cluster member comes back online.

Subset load and configuration messages are displayed on the member on which the load operation was initiated. For example, if you initiate the load operation of the `OSFDCMT510` subset on `member2` of a three member cluster, messages similar to the following are displayed on `member2`:

```

Checking file system space required to install selected subsets:

File system space checked OK.

1 subset(s) will be installed.

Loading subset 1 of 1 ...

Doc. Preparation Tools
  Copying from rissserver1 (inet)
    Working....Fri Aug 25 14:48:02 EST 2000
  Verifying

1 of 1 subset(s) installed successfully.

Configuring "Doc. Preparation Tools" (OSFDCMT510) on member 0.
Configuring "Doc. Preparation Tools" (OSFDCMT510) on member 1.
Configuring "Doc. Preparation Tools" (OSFDCMT510) on member 2.
Configuring "Doc. Preparation Tools" (OSFDCMT510) on member 3.

```

In the previous example, `member0` is not a physical machine; it is a directory that serves as a general repository for cluster member specific information.

For a record of the software subset load activity for each cluster member, review the log file located at `/var/adm/smlogs/setld.log` on each cluster member.

## 9.10 Recovering from Subset Load or Delete Failures on a Cluster Member

If a subset fails to load or is not removed from one or more members of a cluster, the installation status of that subset across the entire cluster is corrupted.

Load and delete operation failures from all cluster members will be displayed on the member on which the operation is initiated. After recovering from the failure, invoke the `setld` utility using the appropriate recovery option shown in Table 9–2 to make the cluster installation status consistent among all members in the cluster.

Table 9–2 lists the `setld` flags that are used to recover from load or delete failures on individual cluster members.

**Table 9–2: Cluster Load and Delete Recovery Options of the `setld` Utility**

Option	Description
<code>-m</code>	Specifies the cluster member ID to recover when a load or delete operation fails on one or more members in a cluster. This flag is used in conjunction with the <code>-C</code> and <code>-Z</code> flags. Use the <code>clu_get_info</code> command to determine the member ID for cluster members.

### Caution

Do not use this operand to install or remove software on a particular member. This flag is used for recovery purposes only, and it is not the intended nor supported method to install or remove software on a cluster.



**Table 9–2: Cluster Load and Delete Recovery Options of the setld Utility (cont.)**

Option	Description
-C	<p>Runs the configure install phase of the named software subset's SCP on the named cluster member.</p> <p>For example, to recover from a load failure of the OSFDCMT510 subset on member1 of a three member cluster:</p> <pre># setld -m member1 -C OSFDCMT510</pre>
-Z	<p>Runs the configure delete phase of the named software subset's SCP on the specified cluster member.</p> <p>For example, to recover from a delete operation failure of the OSFDCMT510 subset on member1 of a three member cluster:</p> <pre># setld -m member1 -Z OSFDCMT510</pre>

For a software subset load recovery operation, the command syntax is:

```
setld [-D root-path] [-m member-ID] -C [subset-id [ subset-id...]]
```

For a software subset delete recovery operation, the command syntax is:

```
setld [-D root-path] [-m member-ID] -Z [subset-id [ subset-id...]]
```

For more information about software subset control programs (SCPs) and the various phases of the setld utility, refer to the *Guide to Preparing Product Kits*.

## 9.11 Rebuilding the Kernel After Installing Kernel Build Environment Subsets

Certain base operating system products (such as the Logical Storage Manager, Advanced File System, and Asynchronous Transfer Mode) contain a kernel component. If you use setld to install one of these software subsets after the installation, you must run the doconfig utility to rebuild the kernel with the new kernel component; otherwise you will not be able to use the software product. After building a new kernel, move the new kernel to the / (root) file system, and reboot with the new kernel to make the product available for use.

Refer to Appendix C for a list of the software subsets that contain kernel components for which you must run the doconfig utility to build a new kernel. Refer to the doconfig(8) reference page for more information.

If you install the Asynchronous Transfer Mode (ATM) DGLTA adapter after installing the operating system, you must boot the system off the generic kernel genvmunix, install the ATM software subsets from the CD-ROM, and

then run the `doconfig` utility to rebuild your system kernel to enable the added ATM support. To configure the adapter, run the ATM configuration utility from the SysMan Menu.

# A

---

## Device Naming Conventions

This chapter discusses the following topics:

- The history of device naming from the old style device naming to the device naming conventions that were introduced in Version 5.0 of the operating system
- Creating device special file names using the new naming conventions
- How device names are assigned including an example of how device names are assigned after moving an existing disk and adding a new disk
- Preserving device names during a Full Installation
- How an Update Installation maps old and current device names
- How to obtain more information about devices attached to your system

### A.1 History of Device Naming

In versions of the operating system earlier than Version 5.0 and Version 5.1, all devices resided in the `/dev` directory and were named as shown in Table A-1.

**Table A-1: Old Device Naming Conventions**

Device Type	Directory	Naming Convention
Generic	<code>/dev</code>	<code>std</code> , <code>drum</code> , <code>kmem</code> , <code>mem</code> , <code>null</code> , <code>trace</code> , <code>tty</code> , <code>local</code>
Disks	<code>/dev</code>	<code>rz*</code> , <code>ra*</code> , <code>re*</code>
Tapes	<code>/dev</code>	<code>tz*</code> , <code>ta*</code>
Terminals	<code>/dev</code>	<code>pty</code>
Printers	<code>/dev</code>	-

Starting with Version 5.0 of the operating system, each class of device has a separate subdirectory named for the class as shown in Table A-2.

**Table A–2: Version 5.1 Device Naming Conventions**

Device Type	Directory	Naming Convention
Generic	/dev/generic	
Disks	/dev/disk, /dev/rdisk	dsk, floppy, cdrom, worm, optical
Tapes	/dev/tape, /dev/ntape	9trk, qic, 8mm, 3480, dlt, dat
Terminals	/dev/term	serial, ptm, pts, ptm_v, pts_v
Printers	/dev/printer	lp
Logical Storage Manager (LSM)	/dev/vol , /dev/rvol	rootdg/root_vol, rootdg/swap_vol, rootdg/usr_vol

The directory and actual device names are self explanatory, with a few notable exceptions:

disk, rdisk	The disk subdirectory refers to block device nodes. The rdisk subdirectory refers to character device nodes.
tape, ntape	The tape subdirectory refers to rewind-on-close device nodes. The ntape subdirectory refers to no-rewind-on-close device nodes.

Table A–3 shows how old-style device names map to the current device names.

**Table A–3: Mapping of Old Style and New Style Device Names**

Device	Old Device Name	New Device Name
System disk, character device	/dev/rrz0a	/dev/rdisk/dsk0a
System disk, block device	/dev/rz0a	/dev/disk/dsk0a
Diskette drive	/dev/fd0c	/dev/disk/floppy0c
CD-ROM	/dev/rz4c	/dev/disk/cdrom0c

## A.2 Creating Device Special Files

Every time the system is booted, the system hardware is scanned and any new device special files are created automatically. If you add a new device to the system and want to create the device special file without rebooting the system, use the `hwmgpr` command. For example, the following command

scans the SCSI bus for any new devices and automatically creates the device special files for any new devices.

```
# hwmgr -scan scsi
```

---

**Note**

---

Starting with Version 5.0 of the operating system, the `/dev/MAKEDEV` command is no longer used to create device special files.

---

### A.3 How Device Names Are Assigned

Each time a new device is created, it is assigned the next available device name. When the system is installed for the first time, the hardware is probed in order to determine the devices that exist on the system. The hardware probe starts at bus 0/target 0 and probes each successive target on bus 0. It then proceeds to probe bus 1 and all of its targets starting from target 0. As each new device is discovered, it is assigned the next available device number, starting from 0. Table A-4 shows a sample device naming scenario:

**Table A-4: Sample Device Naming Scenario**

Bus #	Target #	Old Style Device Name	New Device Name	Worldwide ID
0	0	rz0	dsk0	DEC100 <sup>a</sup>
0	4	rz4	dsk1	DEC101
1	3	rz11	dsk2	DEC102
1	6	rz14	dsk3	DEC103
1	7	rz15	dsk4	DEC104

<sup>a</sup> The worldwide IDs (WWIDs) in this table are fabricated and have been shortened for purposes of illustration. The WWIDs on your system will be different.

Once a physical disk has been assigned to a device name, it retains that device name, regardless of its position on the bus. Each physical device is given a unique worldwide identifier at the time it is manufactured. It is this worldwide identifier that is used to map the physical device to the new device name. This means that a disk can be moved from slot to slot on the bus without having to change the device name. So, if you move a disk from one slot to another you would continue to refer to the disk using the same device name. Using the example in Table A-4, if the disk known as `dsk0` were to move from bus 0/target 0 to bus 1/target 4, the new device name would remain the same. Under previous releases the device would need to be accessed as `rz12`, but in the new release the device name remains

dsk0. This is because the device name is tied to the worldwide identifier and not to the position of the disk on the bus.

Once a device is assigned a new device name, it retains that name whenever the system reboots. New devices are given the next available device name. Continuing the example used in Table A-4, assume that the DEC100 device (dsk0) has been moved from bus 0/target 0 to bus 1/target 4. Also assume that a new device (DEC099) has been added to the system on bus 0/target 0. Table A-5 shows the new device names when the system reboots:

**Table A-5: Device Name Assignments After Moving and Adding a Device**

Bus #	Target #	Old Style Device Name	New Device Name	Worldwide ID
<b>0</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>rz0</b>	<b>dsk5</b>	<b>DEC099<sup>a</sup></b>
0	4	rz4	dsk1	DEC101
1	3	rz11	dsk2	DEC102
<b>1</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>rz12</b>	<b>dsk0</b>	<b>DEC100</b>
1	6	rz14	dsk3	DEC103
1	7	rz15	dsk4	DEC104

<sup>a</sup> The worldwide IDs (WWIDs) in this table are fabricated and have been shortened for purposes of illustration. The WWIDs on your system will be different.

Table A-5 shows that the DEC100 device still retains the dsk0 device name, even though it has moved to another bus/target. The new device (DEC099) has been assigned the next available device name (dsk5). See Section A.6 for information about obtaining device information from the operating system.

## A.4 Preserving Device Names During a Full Installation

When you perform a Full Installation, the existing device naming databases are lost. This means that the new device names will be assigned based upon the order in which the devices are found. This new naming scheme may be different from the naming scheme used in older versions of the operating system. However, there is a way to save this information during a Full Installation. This feature is particularly useful if you have applications that use the existing device names and you intend to run those applications on the new version of the operating system. If you do not preserve the device naming databases, your applications may access the wrong devices. The device names can be preserved across Full Installations using the following steps:

1. Shut down the system to console mode:

```
# shutdown -h now
```

2. Examine the `bootdef_dev` console variable:

```
>>> show bootdef_dev
```

If the value of the `bootdef_dev` variable is set to the disk containing the / (root) file system, the Full Installation procedure automatically preserves the hardware device database and there is no need to do anything. If not, proceed to the next step.

3. Set the value of the `bootdef_dev` variable if it is not set to the disk containing the / file system:

```
>>> set bootdef_dev dka0
```

4. Perform the Full Installation. The Full Installation preserves the device databases from the previous version of the operating system. It does this by mounting the device specified by the `bootdef_dev` variable and saving the necessary device database files. These files are then placed on the newly created system. This means the devices on the new system will be mapped exactly as they were from the previous installation.

If you do not want to preserve the device naming from the previous installation, set the `bootdef_dev` console variable to " " (double quotes).

## A.5 Update Installation Device Names

The Update Installation maps the old device names to the new device names, so that the new system will have both the old `rz*` devices and the new `dsk*` devices. The mapping of the old device names to the new device names can be found in the `/etc/dfs1.dat` file. This mapping is determined dynamically each time the system is booted. This is because the old device name is based upon the bus and target location while the new device name remains constant. Therefore, if the disk moves from one bus to another bus, the old device name will change, but the new device name will not. See Table A-2 for details on device naming conventions.

---

### Note

---

The `/etc/dfs1.dat` file should not be modified. This is a database used by the kernel to access system devices. Modifying this file may render devices inoperable.

---

As in releases earlier than Version 5.1, the kernel does not mount the same device more than once. For example, in previous releases of the operating system, you could not mount `/dev/rz0a` on `/mnt` and then mount `/dev/rz0a` on `/mnt1`. This restriction still applies to Version 5.1 of the operating system. This means that if you have an old device name mounted and attempt to mount the same device using the new device name, the

mount will fail. For example, if both `/dev/rz0a` and `/dev/disk/dsk0a` map to the same physical disk, you cannot mount both `/dev/rz0a` and `/dev/disk/dsk0a` at the same time.

## A.6 Obtaining More Device Information

Use the following to retrieve information regarding the state of the hardware.

- The SysMan Station lets you monitor one system or a group of systems and administer system resources. You can set the `View` to see all hardware connected to the system.

If you are logged in as the `root` user, the SysMan Station is available from an icon on the CDE front panel. To open the SysMan Station from the command line, enter:

```
# /usr/sbin/sysman -station &
```

- The Hardware Manager enables you to manage hardware components and the hardware subsystems that maintain information about hardware components. A hardware component can be a storage peripheral, such as a disk or tape, or a system component such as a CPU or a bus. Use the `hwmgr` utility to manage hardware components on either a single system or on a cluster.

The `hwmgr` utility provides two types of commands, internal and generic. Internal commands do not contain a subsystem identifier on the command line. Generic commands are characterized by a subsystem identifier after the command name.

The Hardware Manager uses the following generic command syntax:

```
/sbin/hwmgr command [subsystem] [parameters]
```

For example, use the following command to determine the worldwide IDs of the disks attached to your system:

```
# hwmgr -get attribute -category disk
```

Refer to the `hwmgr(8)` reference page for more information about the utility and for more command line examples.



# B

---

## Compact Disc Overview

The operating system software is distributed on four read-only compact discs (CD-ROM):

- The CD-ROM labeled *Operating System Volume 1* contains the base operating system software subsets. The software subsets contained on this CD-ROM are described in Section C.1.
- The CD-ROM labeled *Associated Products Volume 1* contains the Worldwide Language Support (WLS) software and other layered products that are compatible with the operating system. WLS software subsets are described in Section C.4.1. Generic instructions for installing layered products are provided in Appendix D.
- The CD-ROM labeled *Associated Products Volume 2* contains additional layered products.
- The CD-ROM labeled *Documentation Volume 1* contains the documentation set in HTML and PDF formats. Chapter 8 describes how to mount this CD-ROM to view the documentation set.

This appendix describes how to:

- Determine a CD-ROM device name
- Mount a CD-ROM
- Unmount a CD-ROM

### B.1 CD-ROM Device Names

There are two types of device names that identify a CD-ROM drive. The first name is the regular device special file name, which is used to specify the CD-ROM drive when the system is in single-user or multiuser mode. The second name is the console device name, which is used when the system is in the console mode.

#### B.1.1 Determining the CD-ROM Device Name

Enter the following command to determine the device name of a CD-ROM drive:

```
$ ls /dev/disk/cdrom*c  
/dev/disk/cdrom0c
```

Use this CD-ROM device name to boot from the CD-ROM drive when the system is in single-user mode, for instance, when starting an Update Installation of the operating system.

### B.1.2 Determining the CD-ROM Console Device Name

Enter the following commands to determine the console device name of the CD-ROM device.

```
>>> shutdown -h now
>>> show device
```

Depending upon your system type, a device information table similar to the following is displayed:

dka0.0.0.0.0	DKA0	RZ28	
dkb0.0.0.1.0	DKB0	RZ28	
dkc0.0.0.2.0	DKC0	RZ26	
dkc100.1.0.2.0	DKC100	RZ26	
dkc200.2.0.2.0	DKC200	RZ26	
dkc300.3.0.2.0	DKC300	RZ26	
<b>dke100.1.0.4.0</b>	<b>DKE100</b>	<b>RRD43</b>	←
mka500.0.0.0.0	MKA500	TLZ04	
mke0.0.0.4.0	MKE0	TZ85	
ewa0.0.0.6.0	EWA0		08-00-2B-2C-CE-DE

In the third column to the right, look for the line with the characters RRD or CD-ROM. These characters denote a CD-ROM device. The second column in the table shows the console device name assigned to each device on your system.

In this example, the RRD43 CD-ROM is assigned to console device name **DKE100**.

Use the console device name to boot from the CD-ROM drive when the system is in console mode.

## B.2 Mounting a CD-ROM

Before you can access the files and directories on a CD-ROM, it must be mounted on a mount point. Follow these steps to mount a CD-ROM:

1. Log in as `root` or become superuser.
2. Enter the following command to find the CD-ROM device name if necessary:

```
# ls /dev/disk/cdrom*c
/dev/disk/cdrom0c
```

3. Use the `mkdir` command to make a directory to be the mount point for the CD-ROM. Then mount the CD-ROM using the `mount` command with

the following syntax, substituting the unit number of your CD-ROM drive for the *unit\_number*.

```
mount /dev/disk/cdrom <unit_number>c /mount-point
```

For example, to mount the CD-ROM in drive `/dev/disk/cdrom0c` on the directory `/cdrom`, enter the following commands:

```
# mkdir /cdrom
# mount -r /dev/disk/cdrom0c /cdrom
```

4. To ensure that the CD-ROM is remounted in the event that your system crashes or is rebooted, add the following line to the `/etc/fstab` file:

```
/dev/disk/cdrom0c      /cdrom  ufs    ro    0    0
```

The system will mount the CD-ROM on the `/cdrom` mount point on every system reboot.

## B.3 Unmounting a CD-ROM

You must unmount a CD-ROM from its mount point by using the `umount` command before you can eject it from the disc drive. To unmount a CD-ROM, you must be superuser or `root` and you must be at least one directory above the mount point of the CD-ROM. Use commands similar to the following to unmount a CD-ROM:

```
# cd /
# umount /cdrom
```

If you do not unmount the CD-ROM before trying to remove it, the CD-ROM will not eject from the drive when you press the EJECT button. If you are in the directory of the mount point of the CD-ROM when you execute the `umount` command, you will see the message `device busy`.

To remove the disc from the disc drive after it is unmounted, press the EJECT button on the disc drive.

If the EJECT button is disabled by software or if the drive does not eject the caddy after you press the EJECT button, refer to your *Optical Disc Drive Owner's Manual* for instructions.



# C

---

## Software Subset Descriptions

This chapter provides descriptions of all software subsets that are part of the current version of the operating system.

### C.1 Base Operating System Software Subset Descriptions

The software subsets described in this section are located on the CD-ROM labeled *Operating System Volume 1*.

Software subsets are divided into the following categories:

- **Mandatory software subsets** are installed automatically during Full Installations. These software subsets represent the minimum software needed to install and run the operating system on your hardware configuration.
- **Optional software subsets** represent a variety of applications that can be installed to enrich the features of the operating system. Refer to Chapter 9 for information about using the `setld` command to install optional subsets after the installation.
- **Conditionally mandatory software subsets** are considered mandatory only when certain hardware or software is detected during the installation procedure, which makes the software mandatory. Table C-1 lists the software subsets that are conditionally mandatory. In Table C-1, a group of software subsets that contains the word `or` means that at least one of the software subsets is mandatory when the condition is met.

**Table C-1: Conditionally Mandatory Software Subsets**

Software Subset Name	What Makes It Mandatory?
DECwindows 75dpi Fonts DECwindows 100dpi Fonts	The resolution of the graphics adapter attached to the system.
X Servers for PCbus X Servers for TurboChannel	The type of graphics adapter attached to the system.

**Table C–1: Conditionally Mandatory Software Subsets (cont.)**

<b>Software Subset Name</b>	<b>What Makes It Mandatory?</b>
Graphical Base System Management Utilities Graphical Print Configuration Application Graphical System Administration Utilities Netscape Communicator V4.7 CDE Desktop Environment Basic X Environment X Servers X Fonts Adobe Font Metric Files CDE Mail Interface DECwindows Mail Interface	A graphics adapter is attached to the system.
LK201 Keyboard Support LK401 Keyboard Support LK411 Keyboard Support LK421 Keyboard Support LK444 Keyboard Support PCXAL Keyboard Support	The type of keyboard attached to the system dictates which one keyboard subset is installed.
AdvFS AdvFS Kernel Modules	Choosing AdvFS as the file system type for the <code>/</code> , <code>/usr</code> , or <code>/var</code> file systems during the Full Installation.
LSM Kernel Modules LSM Kernel Objects LSM GUI	Choosing to install into LSM volumes during the Full Installation.
ATM Kernel Header and Common Files ATM Kernel Modules ATM Commands	ATM hardware is detected by the Full Installation.

In this appendix, the conditionally mandatory software subsets are described in the software category in which they would appear during an installation if they were not mandatory for your system.

## C.2 Mandatory Software Subsets

The mandatory software subsets shown in Table C–2 always are installed automatically during a Full Installation.

The Base System and the Base System–Hardware Support subsets cannot be deleted once they are installed.

The Standard Kernel Modules, the Kernel Header and Common Files, the Hardware Kernel Modules, the Hardware Kernel Header and Common Files, and the Compiler Back End subsets contain all the files needed to build a standard kernel.

Table C-2 describes the mandatory subsets.

**Table C-2: Description of the Mandatory Software Subsets**

Subset Name	Title and Contents
OSFBASE510	<b>Base System</b> - This software subset includes fundamental utilities and data files for the base operating system. This software subset cannot be deleted.
OSFHWBASE510	<b>Base System-Hardware Support</b> - This software subset provides the hardware dependent portion of the OSFBASE subset. This subset cannot be deleted. This software subset also contains the Monitoring Performance History (MPH) utility that gathers information on the reliability and availability of the operating system and associated platforms.
OSFSYSMAN510	<b>Base System Management Applications and Utilities</b> - This software subset contains all files related to the base system management (SysMan) applications and utilities.
OSFCLINET510	<b>Basic Networking Services</b> - This software subset contains the software required to provide services over the network using the TCP/IP protocols. These services include remote login ( <code>rlogin</code> ) and Network Time Protocol ( <code>xntp</code> ).
OSFCMPLRS510	<b>Compiler Back End</b> - C Language Compiler. This software subset provides the minimum level of C language support required to build operating system kernels. The subset also contains the C compiler executables. This software subset must be used in conjunction with the Software Development Tools and Utilities subset. This software subset is mandatory during the initial system installation, but can be removed if you do not intend to build kernels on your system.
OSFHWBIN510	<b>Hardware Kernel Modules</b> - This software subset provides hardware dependent kernel modules that together with the Standard Kernel Modules let you configure and build the kernel. This software subset is mandatory during the initial system installation, but can be removed if you do not intend to build kernels on your system.

**Table C-2: Description of the Mandatory Software Subsets (cont.)**

Subset Name	Title and Contents
OSFHWBINCOM510	<b>Hardware Kernel Header and Common Files</b> - This software subset provides the hardware dependent kernel header and data files that together with the Standard Kernel Modules and Hardware Kernel Modules let you configure and build the kernel. If you do not plan to build kernels on your system, this subset can be removed. This software subset supports uniprocessor, symmetric multiprocessing (SMP), and realtime configurations.
OSFJAVA510	<b>JAVA Version 1.1.8 Environment</b> - This software subset contains the class libraries, tools, and run-time libraries necessary for the JAVA Version 1.1.8 environment.
OSFBINCOM510	<b>Kernel Header and Common Files</b> - This software subset provides the common kernel header and data files that together with the Standard Kernel Modules and Hardware Kernel Modules let you configure and build the kernel. This software subset is mandatory during the initial system installation, but can be removed if you do not intend to build kernels on your system.
OSFNFS510	<b>NFS Utilities</b> - This software subset provides the software required to mount remote file systems using the Network File System (NFS).
OSFBIN510	<b>Standard Kernel Modules</b> - This software subset provides common kernel modules that together with the Hardware Kernel Modules let you configure and build the kernel. This software subset is mandatory during the initial system installation, but can be removed if you do not intend to build kernels on your system.

### C.3 Optional Software Subsets

The following is a list of the optional software subset categories. Locate the category you are interested in and refer to the corresponding table for subset descriptions. The optional software subsets can be deleted after they are installed.

- General Applications – Table C-3
- Kernel Build Environment – Table C-4
- Kernel Software Development — Table C-5
- Mail Applications – Table C-6



- Network-Server/Communications – Table C-7
- Printing Environment – Table C-8
- Obsolete Components — Table C-9
- Reference Pages – Table C-10
- Software Development – Table C-11
- Supplemental Documentation – Table C-12
- System Administration – Table C-13
- Text Processing – Table C-14
- Windowing Environment – Table C-15
- Windows Applications – Table C-16

### C.3.1 General Applications Software Subsets

Table C-3 describes the software subsets in this category.

**Table C-3: Description of the General Applications Software Subsets**

Subset Name	Title and Contents
OSFTERM510	<b>Additional Terminfo Databases</b> - This software subset contains the additional terminal information databases to support terminals from other vendors.
OSFLEARN510	<b>Computer Aided System Tutorial</b> - This software subset provides a simple, interactive online tutorial about subjects such as basic UNIX file handling, the <code>vi</code> text editor, the capabilities of the <code>ls</code> command, <code>ms</code> macros, editors in general, <code>eqn</code> (a language for typesetting mathematics), and the C Programming Language. Refer to the <code>learn(1)</code> reference page for more information.
OSFDOSTOOLS510	<b>DOS Tools</b> - This software subset provides a collection of tools for manipulating MS-DOS files. The <code>mtools</code> commands are a public domain collection of programs that let you read, write, and manipulate files on an MS-DOS file system (typically a floppy disk) from a UNIX system. Each command attempts to emulate the MS-DOS equivalent command as closely as possible. The following commands are available: <code>mattrib</code> , <code>mcd</code> , <code>mcopy</code> , <code>mdel</code> , <code>mdir</code> , <code>mformat</code> , <code>mlabel</code> , <code>mmd</code> , <code>mrd</code> , <code>mread</code> , <code>mtype</code> , and <code>mwrite</code> .

**Table C-3: Description of the General Applications Software Subsets (cont.)**

Subset Name	Title and Contents
OSFJAVA122510	<b>JAVA Version 1.2.2</b> - This software subset contains the class libraries, tools, and run-time libraries necessary for the JAVA 1.2.2 environment. Installing this subset allows you to develop against the current version of JAVA without having to force the entire base operating system to change to a newer version.
OSFLAT510	<b>Local Area Transport (LAT)</b> - This software subset contains the Local Area Transport (LAT), which is a protocol that provides a means of logically connecting terminal servers to one or more nodes on the same local area network (LAN). LAT software has the features required for a host to function as a service node so requests for connections can be made by server users.
OSFPERL510	<b>PERL Runtime</b> - This software subset contains the run-time libraries needed to run PERL programs.
OSFTKBASE510	<b>Tk Toolkit Commands</b> - This software subset contains the Tool Command Language (TCL) graphical extensions package.
OSFTCLBASE510	<b>TCL Commands</b> - This software subset contains the binary distribution of the Tool Command Language (TCL) and the TCLX extension package without graphical components. TCL is a scripting language. The package consists of the TCL/TCLX shared libraries, the TCL/TCLSH shells, and script libraries. Install this software subset if you want to write or run TCL programs.
OSFSVID2510	<b>UNIX SVID2 Compatibility</b> - This software subset brings the operating system into compliance with the Base System and Kernel Extensions of the System V Interface Definition Issue 2 (SVID2). It also adds a higher degree of compatibility with the Basic Utilities Extensions of SVID2.
OSFUUCP510	<b>UNIX to UNIX Copy Facility</b> - This software subset provides programs and data files needed for a system to participate in a network of machines using the UUCP facility. This facility transmits files over serial communications lines.
OSFEMACS510	<b>xemacs Runtime</b> - This software subset contains the X Emacs editor.

### C.3.2 Kernel Build Environment Software Subsets

Table C–4 describes the software subsets in this category.

**Table C–4: Description of the Kernel Build Environment Software Subsets**

Subset Name	Title and Contents
OSFADVFSBIN510	<b>AdvFS Kernel Modules</b> - This software subset contains the Advanced File System (AdvFS) kernel modules. AdvFS is a log based file system that allows for faster system restarts in case of system crashes.
OSFATMBINCOM510	<b>ATM Kernel Header and Common Files</b> - This software subset provides the ATM kernel header and data files and together with the ATM Kernel Modules subset lets you configure and build a kernel that supports the ATM hardware.
OSFATMBIN510	<b>ATM Kernel Modules</b> - This software subset contains the ATM kernel modules. This software subset is mandatory if ATM hardware is detected during the installation process. ATM technology is a connection-oriented wide area/local area technology based on the high-speed switching of 53-byte cells across a network.
OSFLSMBIN510	<b>Logical Storage Manager Kernel Modules</b> - This software subset provides the kernel modules to build the kernel with LSM drivers. This software subset supports uniprocessor, SMP, and realtime configurations.

### C.3.3 Kernel Software Development Software Subsets

Table C–5 describes the software subsets in this category. These software subsets are optional after the installation. They will not appear on the optional software subset list during a Full Installation. Use the `setld` command if you want to install these software subsets.

**Table C–5: Description of the Kernel Software Development Software Subsets**

<b>Subset Name</b>	<b>Title and Contents</b>
OSFADVFSBINOBJECT510	<b>AdvFS Kernel Objects</b> - This software subset contains the AdvFS Kernel Objects needed for software development of code that is to be built into the kernel.
OSFATMBINOBJECT510	<b>ATM Kernel Objects</b> - This software subset contains the Asynchronous Transfer Mode (ATM) Kernel Objects needed for software development of code that is to be built into the kernel.
OSFHWBINOBJECT510	<b>Hardware Kernel Objects</b> - This software subset contains the Hardware Kernel Objects needed for software development of code that is to be built into the kernel.
OSFBINOBJECT510	<b>Standard Kernel Objects</b> - This software subset contains the Standard Kernel Objects needed for the software development of code that is to be built into the kernel.

### C.3.4 Mail Applications

Table C–6 describes the software subsets in this category.

**Table C–6: Description of the Mail Applications Software Subsets**

<b>Subset Name</b>	<b>Title and Contents</b>
OSFCDEMAIL510	<b>CDE Mail Interface</b> - This software subset contains the Common Desktop Environment mail system. This software subset is mandatory on a system with graphics capabilities.
OSFMH510	<b>RAND Corp. Mail Handler (MH)</b> - This software subset provides programs that constitute the RAND Corporation MH mail reader interface.

### C.3.5 Network-Server/Communications Software Subsets

Table C–7 describes the software subsets in this category.

**Table C–7: Description of the Network-Server/Communications Software Subsets**

<b>Subset Name</b>	<b>Title and Contents</b>
OSFINET510	<b>Additional Networking Services</b> - This software subset contains the software that provides the networking services; IMAP4, Post Office Protocol (POP3), Berkeley Internet Name Domain (BIND) and Network Information Services (NIS).
OSFATMBASE510	<b>ATM Commands</b> - This software subset contains the software that provides the Asynchronous Transfer (ATM) mode commands. This software subset is mandatory if ATM hardware is detected during the installation process.
OSFDMS510	<b>Dataless Management Services</b> - This software subset provides the software needed to run Dataless Management Services (DMS). In a DMS environment, a server maintains the / (root), /usr, and /var file systems for client systems. Paging, swapping, and dumping is done on the clients local disks. The UNIX-SERVER product authorization key (PAK) must be loaded and registered to use DMS.
OSFRIS510	<b>Remote Installation Services (RIS)</b> - This software subset provides the ability to perform installations of the operating system and applications over a network. The UNIX-SERVER product authorization key (PAK), must be loaded and registered to use RIS.

### C.3.6 Printing Environment Software Subsets

Table C–8 describes the software subsets in this category.

**Table C–8: Description of the Printing Environment Software Subsets**

Subset Name	Title and Contents
OSFAFM510	<b>Adobe Font Metric Files</b> - This software subset contains font metrics (character bounding box, width, name, ligature, kerning, and font properties) for PostScript outline fonts used by text formatting applications on PostScript output devices. This software subset is needed to view files.
OSFPRINT510	<b>Local Printer Support</b> - This software subset provides printer commands such as <code>lpr</code> , <code>lpg</code> , and <code>lpd</code> utilities; configuration files; filters; and PostScript printer support.

### C.3.7 Obsolete Components Software Subsets

Table C–9 describes the software subsets in this category.

**Table C–9: Description of the Obsolete Components Software Subsets**

Subset Name	Title and Contents
OSFOBSOLETE510	<b>Obsolete Commands and Utilities</b> - This software subset contains the commands and utilities that are no longer supported in the current version of the operating system.

### C.3.8 Reference Pages Software Subsets

Table C–10 describes the software subsets in this category.

**Table C–10: Description of the Reference Pages Software Subsets**

Subset Name	Title and Contents
OSFMANOS510	<b>Ref Pages: Admin/User</b> - This software subset provides the online reference pages for system administrators and general users.
OSFCDEMANOS510	<b>Ref Pages: CDE Admin/User</b> - This software subset contains the reference pages for Common Desktop Environment general users and system administrators.
OSFCDEMANOP510	<b>Ref Pages: CDE Development</b> - This software subset contains the Common Desktop Environment development reference pages.
OSFMANOP510	<b>Ref Pages: Programming</b> - This software subset provides the online reference pages for programmers. It also contains the online reference pages for the Realtime kernel.

**Table C–10: Description of the Reference Pages Software Subsets (cont.)**

Subset Name	Title and Contents
OSFMANWOS510	<b>Ref Pages: Windows Admin/User</b> - This software subset provides the online reference pages for windows administrators and users.
OSFMANWOP510	<b>Ref Pages: Windows Programming</b> - This software subset provides the online reference pages for windows programmers.

### C.3.9 Software Development Software Subsets

Table C–11 describes the software subsets in this category.

**Table C–11: Description of the Software Development Software Subsets**

Subset Name	Title and Contents
OSFCDEDEV510	<b>CDE Software Development and Programming Examples</b> - This software subset contains the header files, static libraries, and tools needed for Common Desktop Environment (CDE) development.
OSFRCS510	<b>GNU Revision Control System</b> - This software subset contains programs that make up the UNIX Revision Control System (RCS), which provides a regulation mechanism for large software projects.
OSFJAVADEV510	<b>JAVA Version 1.1.8 Development Environment</b> - This software subset contains JAVA development tools, which allows you to compile and debug JAVA code.
OSFJAVADEV122510	<b>JAVA Version 1.2.2 Development Environment</b> - This software subset contains JAVA development tools, which allows you to compile and debug JAVA code.
OSFLDBBASE510	<b>Ladebug Debugger</b> - This software subset contains the command line interface for the Ladebug Debugger. The Ladebug Debugger is a symbolic source-level debugger that supports debugging of ADA, C/C++, Fortran, and Fortran 90 applications.
OSFLDBDOC510	<b>Ladebug Debugger Release Notes</b> - This software subset contains the Ladebug Debugger Release Notes. The release notes are located at <code>/usr/doc/ladebug/ladebug-relnotes.txt</code> when this subset is installed.
OSFEXAMPLES510	<b>Programming Examples</b> - This software subset contains programming examples.

**Table C–11: Description of the Software Development Software Subsets (cont.)**

Subset Name	Title and Contents
OSFSDECDE510	<p><b>Software Development Desktop Environment</b> - This software subset contains the Common Desktop Environment (CDE) files necessary to start the Ladebug Debugger and the Porting Assistant from the CDE desktop.</p>
OSFSDE510	<p><b>Software Development Tools and Utilities</b> - This software subset provides additional software development environment extensions. This software subset includes the ATOM tools <code>hiprof</code>, <code>pixie</code>, and <code>third</code>. The OSF-DEV-USER Product Authorization Key (PAK), is required to use the tools and utilities included in this software subset.</p>
OSFSCCS510	<p><b>Source Code Control System</b> - This software subset contains programs that make up the UNIX Source Code Control System (SCCS), which provides a regulation mechanism for large software projects.</p>
OSFINCLUDE510	<p><b>Standard Header Files</b> - This software subset contains the standard header files for C programming.</p>
OSFPGMR510	<p><b>Standard Programmer Commands</b> - This software subset contains libraries and utilities useful for software development. It includes the libraries for linking programs to be analyzed with the <code>dbx</code> debugger and <code>lex</code> and <code>yacc</code> parser packages. Also included in this software subset is the ATOM performance analysis and debugging tool kit.</p>
OSFLIBA510	<p><b>Static Libraries</b> - This software subset contains the static libraries for linking programs that do not use shared libraries. Some software development tools work only with static linked programs.</p>
OSFXINCLUDE510	<p><b>X Window and X/Motif Header Files</b> - This software subset contains the X window header files needed for X11 and Motif software development.</p>
OSFXEXAMPLES510	<p><b>X Window and X/Motif Programming Examples</b> - This software subset contains examples of X and Motif programs.</p>



**Table C–11: Description of the Software Development Software Subsets (cont.)**

Subset Name	Title and Contents
OSFXDEV510	<b>X Window and X/Motif Software Development</b> - This software subset provides the library and data files needed to produce X/Motif Window System client applications. This software subset also includes example programs demonstrating how to get started.
OSFXLIBA510	<b>X Window and X/Motif Static Libraries</b> - This software subset contains the X Window static libraries for linking programs that do not use shared libraries. Some software development tools only work with static linked programs.

### C.3.10 Supplemental Documentation Software Subset

Table C–12 describes the software subset in this category.

**Table C–12: Description of the Supplemental Documentation Software Subsets**

Subset Name	Title and Contents
OSFJAVADOC510	<b>Online Documentation for JAVA Version 1.1.8</b> - This software subset contains online documentation for the JAVA Version 1.1.8 development tools.
OSFJAVADOC122510	<b>Online Documentation for JAVA Version 1.2.2</b> - This software subset contains online documentation for the JAVA Version 1.2.2 development tools.
OSFXIEDOC510	<b>XIE Version 5 Online Documentation</b> - This software subset provides compressed PostScript files of documents for the X Window System Image Extension (XIE) software.

### C.3.11 System Administration Software Subsets

Table C–13 describes the software subsets in this category.

**Table C–13: Description of the System Administration Software Subsets**

<b>Subset Name</b>	<b>Title and Contents</b>
OSFADVFS510	<b>AdvFS</b> - The subset contains the system administration commands required for creating and managing the Advanced File System (AdvFS).
OSFADVFSDAEMON510	<b>Advanced File System Daemon</b> - This software subset contains the AdvFS daemon.
OSFXADVFS510	<b>Advanced File System GUI</b> - This software subset contains the graphical user interface for the AdvFS administration utility.
OSFNETCONF510	<b>Basic Networking Configuration Applications</b> - This software subset contains the network configuration applications.
OSFDIABASE510	<b>DECevent Base Kit</b> - This software subset contains the DECevent management utility, which provides an interface between a user and the operating system's event logger. DECevent translates system events into ASCII reports and monitors and analyzes system events to identify failing device components.
OSFC2SEC510	<b>Enhanced Security</b> - This software subset provides additional configurable system security features such as identification, authentication and audit.
OSFXC2SEC510	<b>Enhanced Security GUI</b> - This software subset provides the graphical user interface for the C2 Security subset.
OSFENVMON510	<b>Environmental Monitoring</b> - This software subset provides a means of detecting the thermal state, fan status, and redundant power supply status of AlphaServer systems (specifically AlphaServer 1000A systems, AlphaServer 4100 systems, and AlphaServer 8200 systems) in enough time to prevent damage to the system itself. This subset contains the components needed to implement Environmental Monitoring.
OSFXSYSMAN510	<b>Graphical Base System Management Utilities</b> - This software subset contains the graphical system management Tool Command Language (TCL/TK) shell, some utility libraries, the configuration checklist application (for postinstallation use), and the Common Desktop Environment (CDE) application manager rules files for the creation of system management applications within the application manager. It also contains all the system management application icons. This software subset is mandatory on systems with graphics capabilities.

**Table C–13: Description of the System Administration Software Subsets (cont.)**

Subset Name	Title and Contents
OSFXPRINT510	<p><b>Graphical Print Configuration Application</b> - This software subset contains all files relating to the graphical print configuration application, <code>printconfig</code>. This software subset is mandatory on systems with graphics capabilities.</p>
OSFXADMIN510	<p><b>Graphical System Administration Utilities</b> - This software subset contains all files relating to the following graphical system administration utilities: account manager, archiver, file sharing, host manager, system info, kernel tuner, license manager, and process tuner. This software subset is mandatory on systems with graphics capabilities.</p>
OSFIMXE510	<p><b>Insight Manager</b> - This software subset contains agents that allow the system to be managed remotely by the Compaq Insight Manager system administration tool.</p>
OSFKTOOLS510	<p><b>Kernel Debugging Tools</b> - This software subset provides tools for analyzing and debugging kernels.</p>
OSFLSMBASE510	<p><b>Logical Storage Manager</b> - This software subset contains the LSM administrative commands and tools required to manage an LSM configuration. This subset is mandatory if you select to install LSM during a Full Installation.</p>
OSFLSMX11510	<p><b>Logical Storage Manager Graphical User Interface</b> - This software subset contains the LSM Motif-based graphical user interface (GUI) management tool and related utilities.</p>
OSFNFSCONF510	<p><b>NFS Configuration Application</b> - This software subset contains the files related to the Network File System (NFS), which allows you to export (share) local directories and import (mount) remote directories over the network.</p>
OSFSERVICETOOLS510	<p><b>Service Tools</b> - This software subset contains the <code>syscheck</code> service tool, which is used to capture, print, and escalate system problems into reports to mail to corporate customer support representatives.</p>
OSFEURLOC510	<p><b>Single-Byte European Locales</b> - This software subset provides basic internationalization and localization information for 21 Western European countries.</p>

**Table C–13: Description of the System Administration Software Subsets (cont.)**

Subset Name	Title and Contents
OSFACCT510	<b>System Accounting Utilities</b> - This software subset provides programs and data files needed to perform system accounting. This software subset contains log files that grow automatically.
OSFEXER510	<b>System Exercisers</b> - This software subset provides programs that help to diagnose problems with hardware and peripheral devices.

### C.3.12 Text-Processing Software Subsets

Table C–14 describes the software subsets in this category.

**Table C–14: Description of the Text Processing Software Subsets**

Subset Name	Title and Contents
OSFDCMT510	<b>Doc. Preparation Tools</b> - This software subset provides tools to format, manage, and display reference pages, including the <code>nroff</code> formatter and required macros.
OSFDCMTEXT510	<b>Doc. Preparation Tools Extensions</b> - This software subset contains additional <code>nroff</code> macro packages, bibliography tools, and <code>roff</code> tools.

### C.3.13 Windowing Environment Software Subsets

Table C–15 describes the software subsets in this category.

**Table C–15: Description of the Windowing Environment Software Subsets**

Subset Name	Title and Contents
OSFX11510	<b>Basic X Environment</b> - This software subset provides programs required for the following X window applications: <code>dxconsole</code> , <code>dxkeycaps</code> , and <code>dxterm</code> . This software becomes mandatory and is installed automatically on systems with graphics capabilities.
OSFCDEDT510	<b>CDE Desktop Environment</b> - This software subset contains the user interface (that is, the front panel, colors, and so forth) to the Common Desktop Environment (CDE). This subset is mandatory if graphics capabilities are detected on the system.

**Table C–15: Description of the Windowing Environment Software Subsets (cont.)**

Subset Name	Title and Contents
OSFCDEMIN510	<b>CDE Minimum Run-time Environment</b> - This software subset contains the Common Desktop Environment minimum run-time environment, which includes shared libraries and executables for new client development. This subset is mandatory if graphics capabilities are detected on the system.
OSFFONT510	<b>DECwindows 75dpi Fonts</b> - This software subset provides fonts for X11/DECwindows and is needed for specific layered products and low resolution (1024 x 768) monitors. This software subset becomes mandatory (instead of OSFFONT150510) when low resolution graphics are detected during the installation.
OSFFONT15510	<b>DECwindows 100dpi Fonts</b> - This software subset provides workstation font files for systems using either the VR160 15-inch monitor or higher resolution graphics (1280 x 1024). This software subset is mandatory when high resolution graphics are detected during the installation.
OSFKBDLK201510	<b>LK201 Keyboard Support</b> - This software subset provides keyboard support for the Model LK201 keyboard. A label affixed to the underside of your keyboard shows the model number of the keyboard. This software subset becomes mandatory if this keyboard type is detected during the installation.
OSFKBDLK401510	<b>LK401 Keyboard Support</b> - This software subset provides support for the Model LK401 keyboard. A label affixed to the underside of your keyboard shows the model number of the keyboard. This software subset becomes mandatory if this keyboard type is detected during the installation.
OSFKBDLK411510	<b>LK411 Keyboard Support</b> - This software subset provides support for the Model LK411 keyboard. A label affixed to the underside of your keyboard shows the model number of the keyboard. This software subset becomes mandatory if this keyboard type is detected during the installation.
OSFKBDLK421510	<b>LK421 Keyboard Support</b> - This software subset provides support for the Model LK421 keyboard. A label affixed to the underside of your keyboard shows the model number of the keyboard. This software subset becomes mandatory if this keyboard type is detected during the installation.

**Table C–15: Description of the Windowing Environment Software Subsets (cont.)**

Subset Name	Title and Contents
OSFKBDLK444510	<b>LK444 Keyboard Support</b> - This software subset provides support for the Model LK444 keyboard. A label affixed to the underside of your keyboard shows the model number of the keyboard. This software subset becomes mandatory if this keyboard type is detected during the installation.
OSFTRUETYPE510	<b>TrueType Font Renderer</b> – This subset contains a TrueType font renderer as a plugin for the X server. This renderer enables the X server to rasterize the TrueType font and display it on the screen.
OSFKBDPCXAL510	<b>PCXAL Keyboard Support</b> - This software subset provides support for the Model PCXAL keyboard. A label affixed to the underside of your keyboard shows the model number of the keyboard. This software subset becomes mandatory if this keyboard type is detected during the installation.
OSFXOEM510	<b>X Customizations for OEM</b> - This software subset contains X Window customizations and special logo information for use by specific original equipment manufacturers (OEMs) when they install the operating system on their own hardware. This software subset is not intended for general use and should not be installed if your site is not an OEM.
OSFMITFONT510	<b>X Fonts</b> - This software subset provides X11 fonts from the X Consortium compiled for the X server. This software subset becomes mandatory and is installed automatically on systems with graphics capabilities.
OSFSER510	<b>X Servers Base</b> - This software subset provides X11/DECwindows server support. A DECwindows server is the software that provides windowing on a workstation. This software subset becomes mandatory and is installed automatically on systems with graphics capabilities.
OSFSERPC510	<b>X Servers for PCbus</b> - This software subset provides graphics support for systems using the PCI bus. This software subset is loaded automatically when the installation procedure detects a PCI bus. This software subset also provides graphics support for EISA and PCI based systems that support QVision. This software subset is loaded automatically when the installation procedure detects QVision.

**Table C–15: Description of the Windowing Environment Software Subsets (cont.)**

Subset Name	Title and Contents
OSFSERTC510	<b>X Servers for TurboChannel</b> - This software subset provides graphics support for systems with Turbochannel cards. This software subset is mandatory and is installed automatically when the installation procedure detects a Turbochannel card.
OSFMOTIF11510	<b>X/Motif 1.1</b> - This software subset contains the Motif Version 1.1 shared libraries for compatibility with programs that may not work with the Version 1.2 shared libraries.

### C.3.14 Windows Applications Software Subsets

Table C–16 describes the software subsets in this category.

**Table C–16: Description of the Windows Applications Software Subsets**

Subset Name	Title and Contents
OSFDECW510	<b>Additional DECwindows Applications</b> - This software subset provides additional X11/DECwindows client applications such as dxdiff (a visual differences program) and dxnotepad.
OSFXMIT510	<b>Additional X Applications</b> - This software subset contains the additional X Consortium X11 R5 client applications such as: appres, bitmap, bmtoa, atobm, bdftopcf, editres, ico, iconv, listres, lndir, maze, mkdirhier, oclock, puzzle, resize, showfont, showrgb, viewres, x11perf, x11perfcomp, x11perfcomp, xauth, xbiff, xcalc, xclipboard, xclock, xcmsdb, xcmstest, xcutsel, xdpr, xdpinfo, xedit, xev, xeyes, xfd, xfontsel, xgc, xkill, xload, xlogo, xlsatoms, xlsclients, xlsfonts, xmag, xman, xmh, xmkmf, xon, xpr, xprop, xrefresh, xstdcmap, xwd, xwininfo, and xwud. Refer to the reference page for each of these applications for more information.
OSFCDEAPPS510	<b>CDE Additional Applications</b> - This software subset contains the Common Desktop Environment additional applications such as: dxkeyboard, dxkeycaps, and dxdiff. This subset also provides access to the following binaries: dximageview, dtcm, dticon, dtimsstart, and dxkeyboard. This software subset is mandatory on systems with graphics capabilities.

**Table C–16: Description of the Windows Applications Software Subsets (cont.)**

Subset Name	Title and Contents
OSFXDEMOS510	<b>Demo X Applications</b> - This software subset contains X window demonstration applications to provide examples of the capabilities of the X windowing software that can be developed for the operating system.
OSFXNEST510	<b>Nested X Server</b> - This software subset provides the Xnest server and contains the following: the Xnest server binary <code>/usr/bin/X11/Xnest</code> , the Xnest shared library <code>/usr/shlib/libxnest.so</code> , and the Xnest configuration file <code>/var/X11/Xnest.conf</code> . Xnest is a client and a server. Xnest is a client of the real Xserver and appears in a window no more than 3/4 the size of the real server. Xnest is also a server. Clients specify the Xnest server display; Xnest then manages graphics requests on behalf of the clients.
OSFNETSCAPE510	<b>Netscape Communicator V4.72</b> - This software subset contains the Netscape Communicator World Wide Web viewer that is used to view the documentation set on line and for browsing the Internet. This software subset is mandatory on systems with graphics capabilities.
OSFOLDDECW510	<b>Old Additional DECwindows Applications</b> - This software subset provides additional X11/DECwindows client applications such as <code>dxnotepad</code> . These applications will be retired in a future release of the operating system.
OSFXPRT510	<b>Print X Server</b> - This software subset provides X print services.
OSFXVFB510	<b>Virtual X Frame Buffer</b> - This software subset provides the Xvfb server and contains the following: Xvfb server binary <code>/usr/bin/X11/Xvfb</code> , the Xvfb shared library <code>/usr/shlib/libxvfb.so</code> , and the Xvfb configuration file <code>/var/X11/Xvfb.conf</code> . The Xvfb server can run on machines with no display hardware and no physical input devices. It emulates a dumb frame buffer using virtual memory.

## C.4 Worldwide Language Support (WLS) Subsets

The WLS software subsets described in this section are located on the CD-ROM labeled *Associated Products Volume 1*.

When you install WLS software, a set of WLS base software subsets that is compatible with the current version of the operating system is installed



automatically. These subsets are prefixed with `IOSWW`. When you choose a country, additional optional subsets as well as language- and country-specific subsets are installed. The language- and country-specific subsets provide localization (translation) support of language-specific libraries, tools, and utilities. With the exceptions noted in Section C.4.1.1, Section C.4.2.4, and Section C.4.2.2, all WLS software subsets have a United States English equivalent.

Table C–17 lists the countries for which software subsets are available.

**Table C–17: Supported Countries and Languages**

Country	Country
Belgium (French)	Korea
Canada (French)	Lithuania
China (Hong Kong)	Poland
China (Simplified)	Russia
China (Taiwan)	Slovakia
Czech Republic	Slovenia
France	Spain (Catalan)
Germany	Spain (Spanish)
Greece	Sweden
Hungary	Switzerland (French)
Israel	Switzerland (German)
Italy	Thailand
Japan	Turkey

### C.4.1 Worldwide Language Support Base Subsets

Table C–18 lists the base subsets provided for Worldwide Language Support as well as the base subsets provided with specific languages. Included in the table is the United States English subset equivalent, as well as the table in Section C.2 or Section C.3 where you can get a description of the subset.

**Table C–18: Worldwide Language Support (WLS) Base Subsets**

Base Worldwide Language Support Subset	US English Equivalent	Description Location	Languages in Which Subset Is Available
IOSWWBASE510	OSFBASE510	Table C–2	All
IOSWWBIN510	OSFBIN510	Table C–2	Chinese, Japanese, Korean, Thai
IOSWWBINCOM510	OSFBINCOM510	Table C–2	Chinese, Japanese, Korean, Thai
IOSWWMOTIF11510	OSFMOTIF11510	Table C–15	All
IOSWWPGMR510	OSFPGMR510	Table C–11	All
IOSWWPRINT510	OSFPRINT510	Table C–2	Chinese, Greek, Japanese, Korean, Thai, Turkish
IOSWWSYSMAN510	OSFSYSMAN510	Table C–2	All
IOSWWXDEV510	OSFXDEV510	Table C–11	All
IOSWWX115510	OSFXII510	Table C–15	All

**C.4.1.1 WLS Base Subsets with No United States English Equivalent**

The following WLS subsets have no direct United States English equivalent. All subsets are prefixed with `IOSWW`.

<code>BINUCS</code>	<b>Unicode Support Kernel Module</b> – This subset enables the Asian tty driver to handle the UTF-8 character set correctly.
<code>EURLOC510</code>	<b>Worldwide European Unicode Locales</b> – This optional subset contains European UTF-8 Unicode locales, which are required to support the display of European currency symbols. It is available for all languages.
<code>FGC510</code>	<b>Worldwide Composite Unicode Fonts</b> – This subset contains the renderer to display composite

Unicode fonts for supporting the UTF-8 locales. It is available and mandatory for all languages if the response is **yes** to the Euro support question, which is displayed by the `winstall` script.

FONTM510

**Worldwide DECwindows Fonts (Windowing Environment)** – This software subset contains workstation font files mandatory for Asian languages. It is available to Chinese (including Simplified Chinese), Japanese, Korean, and Thai languages.

FONTP510

**Worldwide DECwindows Fonts (Windowing Environment)** – This software subset contains some public domain Unicode fonts. It is part of the WLS base and is available to all languages.

FONT100M510

**Worldwide DECwindows 100dpi Fonts (Windowing Environment)** – This software subset contains mandatory workstation 100dpi font files. This software subset is mandatory for systems using either a VR160 15-inch monitor or a higher resolution graphics monitor. This software subset is optional for systems using a low resolution graphics monitor. There are mandatory font files for ISO-LATIN2 (LAT2FONT100M), ISO-LATIN4 (LAT4FONT100M), ISO-LATIN9 (LAT9FONT100M), and ISO-LATIN Cyrillic (LATCFONT100M).

FONT100P510

**Worldwide DECwindows 100dpi Additional Fonts (Windowing Environment)** – This optional software subset contains additional Workstation 100dpi font files. There are additional font files for ISO-LATIN2 (LAT2FONT100P), ISO-LATIN4 (LAT4FONT100P), ISO-LATIN9 (LAT9FONT100P), and ISO-LATIN Cyrillic (LATCFONT100P).

FONT75M510

**Worldwide DECwindows 75dpi Fonts (Windowing Environment)** – This software subset contains mandatory workstation 75dpi font files. This software subset is mandatory for systems using either a VR160 15-inch monitor or a higher resolution graphics monitor. This software subset is optional for systems using a low resolution

graphics monitor. There are mandatory font files for ISO-LATIN2 (LAT2FONT75M), ISO-LATIN4 (LAT4FONT75M), ISO-LATIN9 (LAT9FONT75M), and ISO-LATIN Cyrillic (LATCFONT75M).

FONT75P510      **Worldwide DECwindows 75dpi Additional Fonts (Windowing Environment)** – This optional software subset contains additional Workstation 75dpi font files. There are additional font files for ISO-LATIN2 (LAT2FONT75P), ISO-LATIN4 (LAT4FONT75P), ISO-LATIN9 (LAT9FONT75P), and ISO-LATIN Cyrillic (LATCFONT75P).

LAT9LOC      **Single-Byte Latin-9 Locales** – This optional subset contains European Latin-9 (ISO8859-15) locales for supporting the new Euro currency sign.

OBSOLETE      **Obsolete Commands and Utilities** – This optional subset contains obsolete printer filters and commands that will be removed in a future release.

OLFONT510      **Worldwide Outline Fonts (Windowing Environment)** – This optional software subset contains outline font files. This software subset requires the OSFAFM510 software subset. There are outline font files for ISO-LATIN2 (LAT2), and ISO-LATIN Cyrillic (LATC). Table C-19 lists the outline fonts and the associated languages.

**Table C-19: Font Subsets and the Language Association**

Font Subset	Languages in Which the Subset Is Available
LAT2FONT100M, LAT2FONT100P, LAT2FONT75M, LAT2FONT75P, LAT2OLFONT	Czech, Hungarian, Polish, Slovak, Slovene
LAT4FONT100M, LAT4FONT100P, LAT4FONT75M, LAT4FONT75P	Lithuanian

**Table C–19: Font Subsets and the Language Association (cont.)**

	<b>Font Subset</b>	<b>Languages in Which the Subset Is Available</b>
	LATCFONT100M, LATCFONT100P, LATCFONT75M, LATCFONT75P, LATCOLFONT	Russian
	LAT9FONT75M510, LAT9FONT100M510, LAT9FONT75P510, LAT9FONT100P510	Euro-Support
MULE510	<b>Worldwide MULE (General Applications)</b> –This software subset contains MULE (Multilingual Emacs) software. MULE is a multilingual enhancement of GNU Emacs. MULE Version 1 was based on GNU Emacs Version 18 and MULE Version 2 is based on GNU Emacs Version 19. MULE Version 1 is no longer supported. This software subset is part of the WLS base, is optional, and is available to all languages.	
MULESRC510	<b>Worldwide MULE Source Files (Public Domain Source)</b> – This software subset contains the source files for MULE. This software subset is part of the WLS base, is optional, and is available to all languages.	
PHRASE510	<b>Worldwide Phrase Input Support (Operating System)</b> – This software subset contains binary files for the Asian phrase input methods and daemons. This software subset is optional and requires the IOSWWBASE510 software subset. It is available for the Chinese, Japanese, Korean, and Thai languages.	
SVEDEV510	<b>Worldwide SVE MNLS Migration Tools (Software Development)</b> – This software subset contains the migration tools of SVE MNLS, System V Environment Multinational Languages Support. It is part of the WLS base, is optional, and is available to all languages.	

UDCOS510	<b>Worldwide User Defined Character Support (Operating System)</b> – This software subset contains tools to create user-defined characters in OS level. It also contains kernel objects for on demand font loading for terminal drivers. This software subset is optional and requires IOSWWBASE510 software subset. It is available for the Chinese, Japanese, Korean, and Thai languages.
UDCWOS510	<b>Worldwide User Defined Character Workstation Service (Windowing Environment)</b> – This software subset contains a tool to create user-defined character fonts for X11/DECwindows. It is optional and requires the IOSWWX11510 software subset. It is available for the Chinese, Japanese, Korean, and Thai languages.
XFR510	<b>Worldwide Two-Byte Outline Font Renderer (Windowing Environment)</b> – This software subset contains the outline font renderer for two-byte outline fonts. It is part of the WLS base, is optional, and is available to all languages. This software subset requires the IOSWWX11510 software subset.

## C.4.2 Language-Specific Subsets

This section lists each supported language as well as the software subsets provided with each language. To reconstruct the actual software subset name, prefix each subset name with `IOSLL`, where `LL` is the two-letter language code. For example, the subset `CDEMAIL` for Germany (the prefix for German is `DE`) becomes `IOSDECDEMAIL`. Each subset also has a three-digit suffix that represents the software version number; so, `IOSDECDEMAIL` becomes `IOSDECDEMAIL510`.

Certain countries share a language; for example, Canada and France both can use the French language subsets. The resulting subset name would use both the country and language code (`IOSLLCC`: `LL`=language, `CC`=country). So, the French-Canada X11 subset name, for example, would be `IOSFRCAX11510`.

Table C-20 lists the mail application subset and the languages in which the subset is available. The United States English equivalent software subset is described in Table C-6.

**Table C–20: Mail Application Subsets**

Language	Mail Application Subset	
	CDEMAIL	
Catalan (CA)		×
Czech (CS)		×
German (DE)		×
Greek (EL)		
Spanish (ES)		×
French (FR)		×
Hebrew (IW)		
Hungarian (HU)		×
Italian (IT)		×
Japanese (JP)		×
Korean (KO)		×
Lithuanian (LT)		
Polish (PL)		×
Russian (RU)		
Slovak (SK)		×
Slovene (SL)		
Swedish (SV)		×
Thai (TH)		×
Turkish (TR)		

Table C–21 lists the software development subsets and the languages in which the subsets are available. The United States English equivalent software subsets are described in Table C–11.

**Table C–21: Software Development Subsets**

Language	Software Development Subsets	
	CDEDEV	XDEV
Catalan (CA)	×	×
Czech (CS)	×	×
German (DE)	×	×
Greek (EL)		

**Table C-21: Software Development Subsets (cont.)**

Language	Software Development Subsets	
	CDEDEV	XDEV
Spanish (ES)	×	×
French (FR)	×	×
Hungarian (HU)	×	×
Italian (IT)	×	×
Hebrew (IW)		×
Japanese (JP)	×	×
Korean (KO)	×	×
Lithuanian (LT)		
Polish (PL)	×	×
Russian (RU)		×
Slovak (SK)	×	×
Slovene (SL)		
Swedish (SV)	×	×
Thai (TH)	×	×
Turkish (TR)		

Table C-23 lists the windowing environment subsets and the languages in which the subsets are available. The United States English equivalent software subsets are described in Table C-15.

Table C-22 lists the mail application subset and the languages in which the subset is available. The United States English equivalent software subset is described in Table C-13.

**Table C-22: System Administration Subset**

Language	System Administration Subset
	XSYSMAN
Catalan (CA)	×
Czech (CS)	×
German (DE)	×
Greek (EL)	
Spanish (ES)	×



**Table C–22: System Administration Subset (cont.)**

Language	System Administration Subset	
	XSYSMAN	
French (FR)		×
Hebrew (IW)		
Hungarian (HU)		×
Italian (IT)		×
Japanese (JP)		×
Korean (KO)		×
Lithuanian (LT)		
Polish (PL)		×
Russian (RU)		
Slovak (SK)		×
Slovene (SL)		
Swedish (SV)		×
Thai (TH)		×
Turkish (TR)		

**Table C–23: Windowing Environment Subsets**

Language	Windowing Environment Subsets Supported			
	CEDT	CDEMIN	X11	CDEHLP <sup>a</sup>
Catalan (CA)	×	×	×	
Czech (CS)	×	×	×	
German (DE)	×	×	×	×
German - Swiss (DECH)			×	
Greek (EL)	×	×	×	
Spanish (ES)	×	×	×	×
French (FR)	×	×	×	×
French - Belgian (FRBE)			×	
French - Canadian (FRCA)			×	

**Table C–23: Windowing Environment Subsets (cont.)**

Language	Windowing Environment Subsets Supported			
	CEDT	CDEMIN	X11	CDEHLP <sup>a</sup>
French - Swiss (FRCH)			×	
Hungarian (HU)	×	×	×	
Italian (IT)	×	×	×	×
Hebrew (IW)	×	×	×	
Japanese (JP)	×	×	×	×
Korean (KO)	×	×	×	×
Lithuanian (LT)			×	
Polish (PL)	×	×	×	
Russian (RU)	×		×	
Slovak (SK)	×	×	×	
Slovene (SL)	×		×	
Swedish (SV)	×	×	×	×
Thai (TH)	×	×	×	
Turkish (TR)	×	×	×	

<sup>a</sup> The CDEHLP subset contains the online help files for the Common Desktop Environment. This software subset is optional and requires the CEDT subset.

Table C–24 lists the windowing applications subsets and the languages in which the subsets are available. The United States English equivalent software subsets are described in Table C–16.

**Table C–24: Windowing Applications Subsets**

Language	Windowing Application Subsets Supported	
	CDEAPPS	DECW
Catalan (CA)	×	×
Czech (CS)	×	×
German (DE)	×	×
Greek (EL)		
Spanish (ES)	×	×
French (FR)	×	×

**Table C–24: Windowing Applications Subsets (cont.)**

Language	Windowing Application Subsets Supported	
	CDEAPPS	DECW
Hebrew (IW)		
Hungarian (HU)	×	×
Italian (IT)	×	×
Japanese (JP)	×	×
Korean (KO)	×	×
Lithuanian (LT)		
Polish (PL)	×	×
Russian (RU)	×	×
Slovak (SK)	×	×
Slovene (SL)		
Swedish (SV)	×	×
Thai (TH)	×	×
Turkish (TR)		

Table C–25 lists the miscellaneous subsets and the languages in which the subsets are available.

**Table C–25: Miscellaneous Subsets**

Language	Miscellaneous Subsets Supported			
	BASE	OLFONT	FONT100 <sup>a</sup>	FONT75 <sup>a</sup>
Catalan (CA)	×			
Czech (CS)	×			
German (DE)	×			
Greek (EL)	×	×	×	×
Spanish (ES)	×			
French (FR)	×			
Hungarian (HU)	×			
Italian (IT)	×			
Hebrew (IW)	×	×	×	×
Japanese (JP)	×		×	×

**Table C–25: Miscellaneous Subsets (cont.)**

Language	Miscellaneous Subsets Supported			
	BASE	OLFONT	FONT100 <sup>a</sup>	FONT75 <sup>a</sup>
Korean (KO)	×	×		
Lithuanian (LT)				
Polish (PL)	×			
Russian (RU)	×			
Slovak (SK)	×			
Slovene (SL)				
Swedish (SV)	×			
Thai (TH)	×	×		
Turkish (TR)	×	×	×	×

<sup>a</sup> Includes M (mandatory) and P (additional) fonts

#### C.4.2.1 Additional Subsets Provided for Asian Languages Other Than Chinese

Table C–26 shows the additional subsets that have United States English equivalents provided for Asian languages.

**Table C–26: Additional Asian-Language Subsets**

Subset	Japanese (JP)	Korean (KO)	Thai (TH)
DOSTOOLS (see Table C–13)	×		
FONTM <sup>a</sup>	×	×	×
FONTP <sup>b</sup>		×	
SYSMAN (see Table C–13)	×		
XADMIN (see Table C–13)	×		
XADVFS (see Table C–13)	×		

<sup>a</sup> The FONTM subset contains workstation fonts.

<sup>b</sup> The FONTP subset contains additional workstation fonts.

#### C.4.2.2 Additional Subsets Provided for Japanese

The following subsets have no United States English equivalents, and are provided for the Japanese language only. All subsets are prefixed with IOSJP.

ABASE510	<b>Additional Japanese Software</b> – This software subset contains additional general applications. This software subset is optional and requires the IOSJPBASE510 software subset.
AMANOS510	<b>Japanese Reference Pages for Additional Software</b> – This software subset contains the reference pages for the Japanese software in IOSJPABASE510. This software subset is optional and requires the OSFDCMT510 software subset.
CDEHLPSJIS510	<b>Japanese (SJIS) Online Help</b> – This software subset contains CDE online help in SJIS (Shift JIS), one of the Japanese character set encodings.
LDBBASE510	<b>Ladebug Debugger</b> – This software subset contains the command line interface for the Ladebug Debugger, which is a symbolic source level debugger that supports debugging of ADA, C/C++, Fortran, and Fortran 90 applications.
LSMX510	<b>Logical Storage Manager (LSM) Graphical User Interface</b> – This software subset contains the LSM graphical user interface management tool and related utilities.
MANOS510	<b>Japanese Reference Pages for Administrators and Users</b> – This software subset contains the online reference pages for system administrators and general users.
MANWOS510	<b>Japanese Reference Pages for Windows Administration and Users</b> – This software subset contains the online reference pages for windows administrators and users.
NETSCAPE510	<b>Japanese Netscape Communicator V4.72</b> – This software subset contains the Netscape Communicator Worldwide Web Viewer that is used to view the documentation set on line and for browsing the Internet.

SDECDE510	<b>Japanese Software Development Desktop Environment</b> – This software subset is optional and requires the IOSJPCDEDT510 and OSFSDECDE510 software subsets.
WNN510	<b>Wnn Input Method</b> – This software subset contains Wnn, the Japanese input method for entering Japanese characters.
WNNPGMR510	<b>Wnn Software Development</b> – This software subset contains the header files and libraries for the Wnn input method development. It is optional and requires the IOSJPBASE510 software subset.
WNNSRC510	<b>Wnn Source Files (Public Domain Source)</b> – This software subset contains the source file for the Wnn input method. This software subset is optional and has no other software subset dependencies.

#### C.4.2.3 Additional Subsets Provided for Thai

The following subsets are provided for the Thai language only. All subsets are prefixed with `IOSTH`. The United States Language equivalent software subsets are described in Table C-2.

BIN	<b>Standard Kernel Modules</b> – This software subset contains the kernel modules for the Thai terminal driver. This software subset is mandatory. This software subset requires the IOSWWBINCOM510 and OSFBIN510 software subsets.
PRINT	<b>Thai Printer Support Environment</b> – This software subset contains the printer filters for Thai printers. This software subset is optional and requires the IOSWWPRINT510 and IOSTHBASE510 software subsets.

#### C.4.2.4 Subsets Provided for Chinese

WLS provides Chinese language support for Traditional, Simplified, Hong Kong, and Taiwan. Subsets available in the Chinese Language group have prefixes that include `IOSZHT` (traditional Chinese), `IOSZHS` (simplified Chinese), `IOSZHTW` (Taiwan Chinese), `IOSZHCHN` (Mainland China), and `IOSZHHK` (Hong Kong Chinese). Table C-27 shows the subsets with United States English equivalents in each Chinese language group.

**Table C–27: Chinese Language Subsets with US English Equivalents**

Subset	Chinese Language					
	Base Chinese (ZH)	Mainland (CN)	Simplified (S)	Hong Kong (HK)	Taiwan (TW)	Traditional (T)
<b>Mail Applications</b>						
CDEMAIL (see Table C–6)		×			×	
<b>Software Development</b>						
CDEDEV (see Table C–11)		×			×	
PGMR (see Table C–11)	×					
XDEV (see Table C–11)			×			×
<b>System Administration</b>						
SYSMAN (see Table C–13)			×			
XADMIN (see Table C–13)			×			
XSYSMAN (see Table C–13)			×			
<b>Windowing Environment</b>						
CDEDT (see Table C–15)		×			×	
CDEMIN (see Table C–15)		×			×	
CDEHLP (see Table C–15)		×			×	
X11 (see Table C–15)	×		×			×
<b>Windowing Applications</b>						
CDEAPPS (see Table C–16)		×			×	

**Table C–27: Chinese Language Subsets with US English Equivalents (cont.)**

Subset	Chinese Language					
	Base Chinese (ZH)	Mainland (CN)	Simplified (S)	Hong Kong (HK)	Taiwan (TW)	Traditional (T)
DECW (see Table C–16)			×			×
<b>Miscellaneous</b>						
BASE	×	×		×	×	

The following Chinese language subsets have no United States English equivalents and are provided for the Chinese language only. All of the following subsets are unique to Chinese. All subsets are prefixed with `IOSZH`.

#### BIG5510

**Big-5 Character Set Support** – This software subset contains all the BIG5 related libraries, charmaps, methods and terminal drivers. This software subset is optional and requires the `IOSZHBASE510` software subset.

#### CONV510

**Traditional and Simplified Chinese Conversion** – This software subset contains the terminal drivers, kernel objects and services for Traditional and Simplified Chinese conversion. This software subset is mandatory and requires the `IOSZHBASE510` software subset.

#### FONTM, FONTP510

**Workstation Fonts** – These software subsets contain the workstation fonts for Traditional and Simplified Chinese.

#### LOC510

**Additional Chinese Locales** – This software subset contains the @ variant locales that have different collating rules for Mainland China and Taiwan Chinese (TW). These software subsets are optional and require the `IOSZHCNBASE510` software subset.

#### OLFONT510

**Chinese Outline Fonts** – These software subsets contain the Chinese outline fonts for Simplified (S) and Traditional (T) Chinese.



## TELEX510

**Telecode Character Set Support** – This software subset contains all Telecode related methods and terminal drivers. This optional software subset is available for Taiwan Chinese (TW) and requires the IOSZHBASE510 software subset.

## TTFONT 510

**TrueType Fonts** – This software subset contains the TrueType Fonts for Simplified Chinese (S). This software subset is optional and requires the IOSZHBASE510 software subset.



# D

---

## Installing Associated Products

This appendix describes how to install associated products. The following topics are discussed:

- General installation information for all associated products
- Installing an associated product from CD-ROM
- Installing an associated product from a remote installation services (RIS) server
- Updating the whatis database after installing an associated product
- Special installation instructions for the Netscape FastTrack Server

### D.1 General Installation Information

Associated products are installed after the initial Full Installation by using the `setld` utility. The installation can be invoked from the Associated Products CD-ROM Volume 1 or 2 or from a remote installation services (RIS) server environment

Most of the product directories on the associated products CD-ROM contain a `doc` subdirectory, which contains the documentation (in HTML and text formats) for the product if it is available. A `README` file in each product directory provides a short description of the product.

With the exception of the Netscape FastTrack Server, follow the instructions in Section D.1.1 or Section D.1.2 to install all associated products.

#### D.1.1 Installing Associated Products from the CD-ROM

Follow this procedure to install an associated product from the Associated Products CD-ROM:

1. Become superuser (or log in as `root`):

```
# su -  
Password: root_password
```

2. Mount the Associated Products CD-ROM at the `/mnt` directory. Refer to Section B.2 if you do not know how to mount a CD-ROM.

If you mount the CD-ROM at a mount point other than `/mnt`, modify the remaining steps accordingly.

3. Change directory to the mounted CD-ROM:

```
# cd /mnt
```

4. Examine the product directories to determine the directory name in which the product is located:

```
# ls -cF
```

5. Change directory to the / (root) directory:

```
# cd /
```

6. Invoke the `setld` utility :

```
# /usr/sbin/setld -l /mnt/product_directory/kit
```

Replace *product\_directory* with the name of the directory where the product is located.

The `setld` utility displays the list of software subsets that are available to install. Choose the software subsets you want from the list.

7. Repeat Steps 4 through 6 for each associated product you want to install.

## D.1.2 Installing Associated Products from a Remote Server

Follow this procedure to install an associated product from a RIS server environment:

1. Ask your RIS server administrator to ensure that your system is a client of the RIS server and is registered for the right environment.
2. Ensure that your system can communicate with the RIS server:

```
# /sbin/ping -c2 ris_server_name
```

Successful communication between your system and the RIS server should result in a zero data packet loss. Command output looks similar to this:

```
# ping -c2 system9
PING system9 (16.59.124.96): 56 data bytes
64 bytes from 16.59.124.96: icmp_seq=0 ttl=255 time=1 ms
64 bytes from 16.59.124.96: icmp_seq=1 ttl=255 time=0 ms
```

```
----system9 PING Statistics----
2 packets transmitted, 2 packets received, 0% packet loss
round-trip (ms)  min/avg/max = 0/0/1 ms
```

In the previous example, `system9` is the name of the RIS server. If your system is not connected to the network, open the System Setup application (by entering `/usr/sbin/checklist`), and use the Quick Setup application to configure basic network services.

3. Invoke the `setld` utility. Remember to append a colon (:) to the RIS server name :

```
# /usr/sbin/setld -l ris_server_name:
```

The `setld` utility displays the list of software subsets that are available to install. Choose the software subsets you want from the list.

### D.1.3 Updating the `whatis` Database After Installing Reference Pages for Associated Products

The `apropos` and `man` commands access reference page entries in the `whatis` database. The `whatis` database that is created in the `/usr/share/man` directory when you initially install base operating system reference pages includes entries only for those reference pages.

The `whatis` database provided as part of the operating system is not updated automatically when an associated product, layered product, third party, or site-specific reference pages are installed after the initial operating system installation. If the `whatis` database exists on your system, you should update the database by executing the `catman -w` command if you install product-specific reference pages. For information about using the `catman -w` command to rebuild the `whatis` database, see the `catman(8)` reference page.

## D.2 Installing Netscape FastTrack Server

Because the FastTrack Server has its own installation program, instructions to install this product are different from the instructions for installing the other associated products.

Follow this procedure to install the Netscape FastTrack Server:

1. Log in as `root`.
2. Install the `WEBNETSCAPEFASTTRACK` subset following the instructions in Section D.1.1.
3. When the installation is complete, change your directory to the FastTrack Server directory on your system:

```
# cd /usr/opt/netscape/suitespot
```

4. Read the `README` file in this directory:

```
# more README
```

This `README` file contains information directly from Netscape about the FastTrack Server kit. Because you have installed FastTrack from the Associated Products Volume 1 CD-ROM, and not from a CD-ROM that was shipped to you by Netscape, you can ignore Steps 1 through

5 of the installation instructions contained in the `README` file. Steps 1 through 5 are installation instructions specific to installing from the Netscape CD-ROM.

5. Run the `ns-setup` program to begin configuring the FastTrack server, and follow the instructions in the `README` file:

```
# ./ns-setup
```

# E

---

## Update Installation Processing on Existing Files

This appendix describes how the Update Installation process merges existing user customizations into the new, updated versions of the files. The following files and topics are described:

- What are protected system files?
- `.new..` files
- `.proto..` files
- `.PreMRG` files
- Merge scripts
- Configured files
- Merging protected system files
- Successful file merges
- Unsuccessful file merges

### E.1 Overview of File Preservation During an Update Installation

An Update Installation preserves all user-created files and accounts. It also attempts to preserve customizations made to system files, which are files shipped in the base operating system. To ensure that the customizations are never lost, an Update Installation process creates backup copies of the customized files before updating them. This appendix describes the files used by the update process to preserve file customizations.

### E.2 Protected System Files

A protected system file is an operating system file that can be customized by the user. Each protected system file is really three files on your system: the file itself, a `.new..` file, and a `.proto..` file. As shown in Table E-1, a protected system file that frequently is customized is the `/etc/hosts` file.

**Table E-1: Protected System File: /etc/hosts**

---

<b>File Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
/etc/hosts	Current Version 4.0G or Version 5.0A file with your customizations — the configured file.
/etc/.new..hosts	Current Version 4.0G or Version 5.0A file as originally shipped.
/etc/.proto..hosts	File created from the /etc/.new..hosts file during the initial Full or Update Installation.

---

### E.2.1 The .new.. Files

An Update Installation prefixes system files with the `.new..` prefix to avoid overwriting the configured system file. So, when the new version of the file is loaded, it is loaded as a `.new..` file and does not overwrite the user-customized version. An Update Installation also compares the configured file against the `.new..` file to determine whether or not you have customized the configured file.

---

**Note**

---

The `.new..` files play an important role in the Update Installation process. Do not modify or remove these files.

---

### E.2.2 The .proto.. Files

A file with a `.proto..` prefix is a copy of the `.new..` file that can be modified. Modify this file only if you are providing site-wide customizations and are using Dataless Management Services (DMS). Otherwise, you should modify the configured version of this file rather than the `.proto..` version.

---

**Note**

---

The `.proto..` files play an important role in the Update Installation process. Do not remove these files.

The only time these files are modified is if you are using DMS. In that case, the `.proto..` files in the dataless areas are modified, not the `.proto..` files for the server's operating system. For more information on DMS, see *Sharing Software on a Local Area Network*.

---



### E.2.3 The .PreMRG Files

The Update Installation process makes copies of all protected system files before updating the system. These copies have a `.PreMRG` suffix. This ensures that all of your customizations can be restored if the automatic merge operation fails. Using the `/etc/hosts` file from Table E-1:

- The `/etc/hosts` file is copied to `/etc/hosts.PreMRG`
- The `/etc/.new..hosts` file is copied to `/etc/.new..hosts.PreMRG`
- The `/etc/.proto..hosts` file is copied to `/etc/.proto..hosts.PreMRG`

### E.2.4 The .mrg.. Files

A file with a `.mrg..` prefix is a script file. This script merges any new functionality added in the new version of the operating system file with your existing configured file.

### E.2.5 The Configured File

The `/etc/hosts` file is the configured file, that is, the file that actually is used and read by the system. This is the file where changes are made during the course of normal system administration and management operations.

## E.3 Merging Protected System Files

An updated operating system preserves all prior existing files and customizations. Preserving customizations involves merging new file modifications with existing custom modifications.

The merge script executes if both of the following conditions are true:

- You have customized a configured file, for example `/etc/hosts`.
- The new version of the operating system has modified the same file.

### E.3.1 Successful Merge

After a successful merge, using the `/etc/hosts` file example, the files shown in Table E-2 are left on your system. The Update Installation process removes the `.PreMRG` files when the files merge successfully. The file `/var/adm/smlogs/it.log` contains a log of the merge process.

**Table E–2: Files Left on the System After Successful Merge: /etc/hosts File**

File Name	Description
/etc/#.mrg..hosts	Version 5.1 merge script.
/etc/.new..hosts	Version 5.1 file as it was shipped.
/etc/.proto..hosts	Your customized Version 4.0G or Version 5.0A /etc/.proto..hosts file with new Version 5.1 functionality added by the merge script. Modify this file only if you are using DMS.
/etc/hosts	Your customized Version 4.0G or Version 5.0A file with new functionality added by the merge script.

### E.3.2 Unsuccessful Merge

If the Update Installation is unable to merge your customized Version 4.0G or Version 5.0A file with the new Version 5.1 file, it will create a `.FailMRG` file and leave the `.PreMRG` file. In order to ensure that your system operates correctly, the Update Installation will also copy the Version 5.1 file to the configured file so that there is a working version of the file present on the system.

Because the working, configured version of the file is a copy of the Version 5.1 file, it will not contain any of your customizations. You will need to manually add any customizations to the file after the update is complete.

Any lines that exist in the backup copy of the configured file (`.PreMRG`) and do not exist in the backup of the originally shipped Version 4.0G or Version 5.0A file (`.new..file.PreMRG`) are your customizations. If the merge failed, using the `/etc/hosts` example, the files shown in Table E–3 will exist on your system. The file `/var/adm/smlogs/upd_mergefail_files` contains a list of failed merge files. If you want to determine why the merge failed, you can examine the log of the merge process in the `/var/adm/smlogs/it.log` and `/var/adm/smlogs/update.log` files.

**Table E–3: Files Left on the System After a Failed Merge: /etc/hosts File**

File Name	Description
/etc/#.mrg..hosts	Version 5.1 merge script.
/etc/.new..hosts	Version 5.1 file as originally shipped.
/etc/.new..hosts.PreMRG	Backup copy of Version 4.0G or Version 5.0A file as originally shipped.
/etc/.proto..hosts	Copy of Version 5.1 /etc/.new..hosts as originally shipped.

**Table E-3: Files Left on the System After a Failed Merge: /etc/hosts File (cont.)**

<b>File Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
<code>/etc/.proto..hosts.PreMRG</code>	Backup copy of Version 4.0G or Version 5.0A file with your customizations.
<code>/etc/hosts</code>	Copy of Version 5.1 file as originally shipped.
<code>/etc/hosts.PreMRG</code>	Backup copy of Version 4.0G or Version 5.0A file with your customizations.



# F

---

## Installation Log Files

Installation log files capture the screen output and processing of Full, Update, and Cloned installations and may provide valuable information for troubleshooting problems. This appendix contains the following information:

- A sample message of the day file
- Reasons why you should review the installation log files
- A description of Full Installation log files
- A description of Update Installation log files

### F.1 The Message of the Day File

A list of the installation log files created during the installation is displayed on the screen each time you log in. Example F-1 shows a sample `/etc/motd` file. The `/etc/motd` file contains the *message of the day* that is displayed each time a user logs in. The installation log files are located in the `/var/adm/smlogs` directory.

#### Example F-1: Sample `/etc/motd` File Showing Location of Log Files

---

```
Tru64 UNIX V5.1 (Rev. nnn); Fri Aug 25 11:44:35 EST 2000
*****
The following files contain a record of the Update Installation session.

    /var/adm/smlogs/it.log           - log for it(8) utility
    /var/adm/smlogs/update.log      - update installation log file
    /var/adm/smlogs/upd_custom_files - log of unprotected customized
                                   system files found during the
                                   update installation.
    /var/adm/smlogs/upd_obsolete_files - log of obsolete system files
                                   found during the update
                                   installation.
*****
The installation software has successfully installed your system.
There are logfiles that contain a record of your installation.
These are:
    /var/adm/smlogs/install.cdf     - configuration description file
    /var/adm/smlogs/install.log     - general log file
    /var/adm/smlogs/install.FS.log  - file system creation logs
    /var/adm/smlogs/setld.log       - log for the setld(8) utility
    /var/adm/smlogs/verify.log      - verification log file
```

---

## F.2 Reviewing Installation Log Files

The installation log files contain useful information about problems that may have occurred during the installation process, and they should be examined for errors after the installation completes. All log files are located in the `/var/adm/smlogs` directory.

## F.3 Full Installation Files

This section describes the following Full Installation log files:

- `install.FS.log`
- `install.log`
- `it.log`
- `setld.log`
- `fverify.log`
- `install.cdf`

### F.3.1 The `install.FS.log` File

The `install.FS.log` file contains a log of the file system creation performed during a Full Installation. Any errors that occurred between the time you confirmed the start of the Full Installation and the completion of file system creation can be found here. This file is used only by a Full Installation.

### F.3.2 The `install.log` File

The `install.log` file contains a log of all the output that was displayed to the screen from the time the file systems were created during the Full Installation until the system rebooted for the first time. This file contains information about file system creation, the operating system subsets that were loaded, and the configuration of any files that are needed to reboot the system for the first time. If the Full Installation was performed using Remote Installation Services (RIS), this file also contains a log of the load and configuration of the Worldwide Language Support subsets, if applicable. This file is used only by the Full Installation.

### F.3.3 The `it.log` File

The `it.log` file contains a log of all the output that was displayed to the screen from the time the system was rebooted with the generic kernel until the time the system was rebooted for the final time with the newly built tailored kernel. Some of the information contained in this file is the configuration of the operating system software and the build of the tailored

kernel. If the installation was performed using CD-ROM, this file also contains the load and configuration of the Worldwide Language Support subsets, if applicable. This file is used by the Full Installation and Update Installation processes.

### F.3.4 The `setld.log` File

The `setld.log` file contains a record of all of the software subset management actions. If there was a problem loading or removing a software subset, a log of the errors will be found here. This file is maintained by the `setld` command and information is appended to the file whenever the `setld` command is used, with the exception of the `setld -i` operation.

### F.3.5 The `fverify.log` File

The `fverify.log` file is maintained by the `/usr/sbin/fverify` utility, and it is modified whenever a software subset is loaded. Every time a subset is loaded, the `setld` command executes the `fverify` utility to verify that all of the files in the subset were correctly loaded. If any files were not correctly installed, a record of the files can be found here along with the reason the files failed to pass verification.

### F.3.6 The `install.cdf` File

The `install.cdf` file contains a record of the information supplied during the Full Installation from the time the installation starts until you confirm the start of the installation. The `install.cdf` file is used to perform an Installation Cloning, which is documented in the *Installation Guide -- Advanced Topics*. This file is used only by the Full Installation.

## F.4 Update Installation Log Files

This section describes the following Update Installation log files:

- `update.log`
- `upd_custom_files`
- `upd_PreMRG_files`
- `upd_mergefail_files`
- `upd_obsolete_files`

### F.4.1 The `update.log` File

The `update.log` file contains a log of all the output that was displayed to the screen from the time the `installupdate` command was invoked until the system is rebooted under the new operating system for the first time.

This log file is used only by the Update Installation process and should be examined to determine if there were any errors during the Update Installation.

#### **F.4.2 The `upd_custom_files` File**

The `upd_custom_files` file contains a list of all of the files that were saved to a `.PreUPD` extension as part of the Update Installation. Files saved to a `.PreUPD` extension are files that contained user customizations that could not be merged automatically with the version of the file shipped with the new operating system. The `.PreUPD` files can be used as references when manually merging customizations into the new files. The `upd_custom_files` file is created by the Update Installation and is used by the Update Installation Cleanup (`/usr/sbin/updadmin`) utility. Never modify this file.

#### **F.4.3 The `upd_PreMRG_files` File**

The `upd_PreMRG_files` file contains a list of all of the files that were saved to a `.PreMRG` extension as part of the Update Installation. Files saved to a `.PreMRG` extension are files that contained user customizations that the update tried to automatically merge with the version of the file shipped with the new operating system, but could not. The `.PreMRG` files can be used as a reference when manually merging customizations into the new files. This file is created by the Update Installation and is used by the Update Installation Cleanup (`/usr/sbin/updadmin`) utility. Never modify this file.

#### **F.4.4 The `upd_mergefail_files` File**

The `upd_mergefail_files` file contains a list of all of the protected system files that failed to automatically merge during the Update Installation. Because the merge failed, the Update Installation saved your customized file to a `.PreMRG` extension and then replaced the customized file with the version shipped in the new operating system. For every file in the `upd_mergefail_files` file, manually merge the customizations from the `.PreMRG` file into the new file. Failure to do the merge of customizations results in the loss of important customizations that may impact system performance. This file is created by the Update Installation process.

#### **F.4.5 The `upd_obsolete_files` File**

The `upd_obsolete_files` file should be empty because obsolete files and directories automatically are removed from the system by the Update Installation. However, this file will contain a list of obsolete directories if there are files present that were created by users or layered products. The



Update Installation does not remove a directory that contains files that are not obsolete.



# G

---

## Error Messages and Troubleshooting

This appendix provides a description of the error messages you might see if there is a problem during an installation. Every attempt was made to make the error list complete, however, it is possible you may encounter errors that are not described here. Logical Storage Manager (LSM) troubleshooting information also is included.

This appendix is organized by topic rather than by error message:

- **Full Installation** error messages
  - Disk label, file system and LSM configuration error messages
  - Fixing LSM configuration errors
  - Fixing multiple `hostid` errors on existing LSM configurations
  - Restarting LSM if it fails to restart when you reboot the system
  - Configuration Description File (CDF) validation errors
  - Software subset load errors
- **Update Installation** error messages
  - Startup error messages
  - CD-ROM error messages
  - RIS error messages
  - Analysis phase error messages
- **Software Configuration** error messages

### G.1 Full Installation Error Messages

The following describes the general error messages that you might encounter during a Full Installation.

#### The firmware revision on this system could not be detected

Some processor types do not allow the Full Installation technology to detect the current installed firmware level. See the *Alpha AXP Systems Firmware Update Release Notes Overview* for information regarding the recommended revision numbers and how to update your system firmware.

**The following error occurred, causing the "ping" command to fail for *disk\_name*:  
<Specific error>**

While using the text-based interface to the Full Installation, you entered the `ping` command to determine the device name associated with a physical disk by blinking the input/output light. For some reason, the `ping` command failed. Failure of the `ping` command does not mean that you cannot use this disk; it simply means the disk cannot be identified in this way.

**No free partitions are remaining on this system, therefore the installation process cannot continue with this configuration. Either choose the "Default File System Layout", or choose a new "Custom File System Layout." If you cannot alter the layout, you may need to edit your disk partitions. Refer to the "Installation Guide – Advanced Topics" for more information about editing disk partitions from the UNIX shell.**

During the Full Installation, the system ran out of free, unused disk partitions. Perhaps a disk has a disk label where partition `a` consumes the entire disk, and there are no other disks available. In that case, you have to repartition the disk into individual segments of the right size. If you are using the graphical user interface, invoke the Disk Configuration utility to perform this task. If you are using the text-based interface, exit to the UNIX shell and use the `disklabel` command to repartition the disk.

Some cases, however, might be more difficult to remedy. For example, if a system had two RZ25 disks (too small for the recommended disk label), and both disks have CD type labels on them (that is, partition `a` and partition `c` are the same large partition, and no other partitions are assigned), one disk could be used for the `/` file system, the other for `/usr`, and there is no place for anything else. The solution in this case is to edit the disk labels.

**The partition you selected for [usr] takes up the entire disk, and leaves no space for the LSM private region. Therefore, you must choose a different partition.**

You selected to install and configure the Logical Storage Manager (LSM). Each disk needs an LSM private region partition, and no room was left on the disk in question. You have to repartition the disk to make a partition at least 2 MB in size to hold the LSM private region. If that is not possible, select another disk.

**Unable to get a list of software subsets available for installation.**

This message would occur if you have a corrupted distribution media. Contact your support representative to obtain a new set of operating system CD-ROMs. If you are performing the installation from a RIS server, the RIS environment may have to be recreated. Contact your RIS administrator about the problem.

Unable to determine the available software due to the following error:  
<Specific error>

This message would occur if you have a corrupted distribution media. Contact your support representative to obtain a new set of operating system CD-ROMs. If you are performing the installation from a RIS server, the RIS environment may have to be recreated. Contact your RIS administrator and notify them about the problem.

## G.1.1 Disk Label, File System and LSM Configuration Error Messages

If errors are encountered during the configuration of a disk label, file system, or Logical Storage Manager (LSM) during a Full Installation, you will be instructed as follows:

Please inspect the file `/var/tmp/install.FS.log` to identify the source of the failure

The `/var/tmp/install.FS.log` file is written in the `/var` memory file system (MFS) and is deleted when the system reboots. Use the `more /var/tmp/install.FS.log` command to view the contents of this file.

The corrective action depends upon the error message returned from the failed command. As a general procedure, ensure that the installation target disk is connected and is operating properly. If it is, restart the installation procedure and select a different disk (if possible). Contact your support representative to diagnose the problem with the disk.

Errors encountered during the LSM configuration phase also can be the result of specific problems with an existing LSM configuration. If possible, analyze the error message returned from the failing command, check and correct the existing configuration, then restart the installation. If you need more information about fixing LSM problems, refer to the *Logical Storage Manager* guide or the related LSM command reference pages.

The following topics are covered in this section:

- Fixing LSM configuration errors
- Fixing LSM multiple `hostid` errors
- Restarting LSM if it fails to restart when you reboot the system

### G.1.1.1 Fixing LSM Configuration Errors

Details on any LSM installation error, including the actual error message, can be found in the `/var/tmp/install.FS.log` file. This file exists in the `/var` memory file system and will be available only until the system is rebooted. Typically, the source of the error will be the last entry in the log.

Additional information on the current state of the LSM configuration can be displayed by using the commands shown in Table G-1:

**Table G-1: LSM Display Commands**

Display Command	LSM Components Displayed
<code>voldisk list</code>	disk, disk media
<code>voldisk -s list</code>	expanded voldisk list output
<code>volprint</code>	volume, plex, subdisk, private region
<code>volprint -t</code>	expanded volprint output
<code>voldg list rootdg</code>	disk group, private region
<code>disklabel -r name</code>	partition fstype

The various components of an LSM configuration can be removed manually once the source of the problem has been identified. The commands to remove specific LSM components are shown in Table G-2:

**Table G-2: LSM Remove Commands**

Remove Command	LSM Components Removed
<code>voldisk rm name</code>	disk
<code>voldg rmdisk name</code>	disk media, private region
<code>voledit -rf rm name</code>	volume, plex, subdisk

The `voldisk rm` command removes the LSM disk and updates the partition fstype on the disk label to `unused`. If, for some reason, the disk label is not updated after executing this command, the fstype can be set manually to `unused` by entering the following command:

```
# disklabel -s unused /dev/disk/dsk0
```

Once the source of the problem has been removed, the installation can be restarted by entering the `restart` command or by rebooting the installation media.

If you do not need to preserve any existing LSM information, LSM can be removed completely from the system by issuing the `disklabel -z` command against each disk on the system before starting the installation procedure. This method is suggested if you are unsure of the integrity of an existing LSM configuration.

---

### Caution

---

Be aware that the original configuration cannot be restored once the existing disk labels have been removed. All existing data on the system is lost.

---

This information is specific to LSM Full Installations, and it is not intended to be an overview of general LSM topics. If you need more information, refer to the *Logical Storage Manager* guide or the related LSM reference pages.

#### G.1.1.2 Fixing Multiple `hostids` Error on Existing LSM Configurations

LSM requires that a single `hostid` be defined for the `rootdg` disk group. Due to various reasons, including swapping disks between LSM systems without properly exporting them from their original system and importing them into the new system, an existing LSM configuration can be left in a state where multiple `hostids` exist for the `rootdg` disk group.

The following message is displayed during a Full Installation if you attempt to install LSM on a system with an LSM configuration that has multiple `hostids`:

```
LSM could not be initialized on this system due to the
following error:
lsm:voldctl: ERROR: enable failed:
Multiple hostid's found for rootdg
```

- o Choose "Continue" if you want the install process to create all file systems without LSM. Refer to the Logical Storage Manager documentation for instructions on how to configure LSM after the installation.
  - o Choose "Exit Installation" if you would like to attempt recovery from the LSM failure. You will be placed in single-user mode at the UNIX shell with superuser privileges. Refer to the Logical Storage Manager documentation for any additional information regarding the error.
- 
- 1) Continue
  - 2) Exit Installation

Enter your choice:

LSM cannot be selected during a Full Installation on a system where multiple `hostids` are found for the `rootdg` disk group. This problem, which is not specific to the installation environment, cannot be resolved in an automated fashion by the Full Installation process. If you want to

install LSM, you must resolve the problem manually before restarting the Full Installation.

You may have to try several different methods to fix the problem:

1. The first way to resolve the problem is to boot the existing system to determine the current state of LSM and remove the invalid `hostids`. On systems where multiple `hostids` exist, messages similar to the following are displayed when LSM is initialized during system boot:

```
starting LSM in boot mode
lsm:vold: WARNING: Disk dsk1d names group rootdg, but group ID differs
lsm:vold: WARNING: Disk dsk2d names group rootdg, but group ID differs
lsm:vold: WARNING: Disk dsk4h names group rootdg, but group ID differs
lsm:vold: WARNING: Disk dsk5h names group rootdg, but group ID differs
lsm:vold: WARNING: Disk dsk6h names group rootdg, but group ID differs
```

In this example, the system has five LSM private regions located on partitions `dsk1d`, `dsk2d`, `dsk4h`, `dsk5h`, and `dsk6h`.

Once the system is running, use the `voldisk -s list` command to view detailed information on each disk under LSM control. This information will include the `hostid` for each private region listed. Once the erroneous `hostids` have been identified, remove the private region containing these `hostids` and restart the Full Installation process. See Section G.1.1.1 for more information about the commands that can be used to interrogate the existing LSM configuration and how to manually remove sources of problems.

---

#### Caution

---

LSM private regions contain information that is critical to the existing LSM configuration. Removing LSM private regions should be performed with the utmost care and only should be performed by someone who understands both LSM and the details of the existing configuration. If you are unsure about performing this task, please ask your system administrator for assistance or refer to the *Logical Storage Manager* guide.

---

2. If the system is in a state where it cannot be booted, or if the system boots but LSM cannot be enabled because the existing LSM configuration is corrupted, the problem will have to be rectified by attempting to physically remove the disk that contains the erroneous private region. In this case, a working knowledge of the system itself and what activities recently have been performed on it will help. There is a good chance that the erroneous private region exists on a disk that recently has been added to the system from another system. For example, an administrator might have swapped disks between systems



without realizing that existing LSM information from the previous system was left on the disk.

3. If removing suspect disks fails to rectify the problem because the proper disk cannot be identified, your only recourse is to completely remove the existing LSM configuration from the system before restarting the Full Installation. This can be performed by booting the distribution media, exiting to the UNIX shell, and using the `disklabel -z` command to zero out the disk label of every disk on the system that contains an LSM private region.

You can determine which disks contain an LSM private region by analyzing the partition `fstype` values from the disk label of each disk. Refer to the `disklabel(8)` reference page for more information regarding LSM `fstype` values. If you cannot determine which disks contain an LSM private region, zero out the disk label of every disk on the system. If zeroing out the disk label of every disk on the system is not feasible, then you can cycle through a process of zeroing out the disk label of a single suspect disk and then restarting the Full Installation process until LSM can be selected. See Section G.1.1.1 for more information about using the `disklabel -z` command to remove an existing LSM configuration.

### G.1.1.3 Restarting LSM

If the LSM daemons `vold` and `voliod` fail to restart when your system is rebooted or the LSM configuration database is corrupted, the LSM volume on which the `/` (root) file system exists will not be accessible. Under such circumstances your system cannot be brought up to multiuser mode. To repair possible problems in `/etc/vol/volboot` or the `rootdg` disk group, use LSM commands to rectify the problem.

Use this procedure to restart LSM if it fails to start during system boot:

1. Create LSM device special files:

```
# volinstall
```

2. Start the LSM configuration daemon in `disable` mode:

```
# vold -k -r reset -m disable -x nohostid
```

3. Initialize the `/etc/vol/volboot` file:

```
# voldctl init
```

4. Put `vold` in the `enabled` mode and import all LSM diskgroups:

```
# voldctl enable
```

5. Get a list of all disks known to LSM:

```
# voldisk list
```

Make sure that all disks have device special files in `/dev/disk`.

6. Execute the `volprint` command to obtain information about the LSM configuration:

```
# volprint -htA
```

7. Start the LSM volumes:

```
# volume -g diskgroup start volume_name
```

The value of the `diskgroup` parameter is most likely `rootdg`, which represents the system disk.

8. To rectify problems in a file, the volume needs to be mounted. For example, the `/` file system may have to be mounted to fix a file such as `/etc/vol/volboot` or `/etc/inittab`.

If the `/` file system was using AdvFS as the file system type, enter commands similar to the following to mount it:

```
# mkdir -p /etc/fdmns/root_domain
# cd /etc/fdmns/root_domain
# ln -s /dev/vol/rootdg/rootvol rootvol
# mount root_domain#root /mnt
```

If the `/` file system was using UFS as the file system type, the LSM volume `rootvol` is mounted as follows:

```
# fsck /dev/rvol/rootdg/rootvol
# mount /dev/vol/rootdg/rootvol /mnt
```

Refer to the *Logical Storage Manager* guide for more information about how to correct problems encountered while enabling LSM or starting LSM volumes.

## G.1.2 Configuration Description File (CDF) Validation Errors

The following message is displayed when the installation procedure encounters an error while validating an `install.cdf` file before beginning an Installation Cloning:

**The Configuration Description File (CDF) validation procedure has found the following errors: <List of specific errors>**

This error causes the Full Installation to stop. The list of CDF validation errors will include one or more messages that discuss the errors encountered in the CDF.

The corrective action depends on the validation errors returned from the install procedure. If you are performing the installation from a RIS server, you should confirm with your RIS server administrator that

your system is registered for the proper CDF. To continue with the cloned installation, the RIS server administrator must either reregister the system with the correct CDF or correct the current CDF based upon the validation error messages.

After you have corrected the problem, restart the Full Installation by doing one of the following:

- Enter `restart` in the root directory
- Reboot the system

The error message is saved in the `/var/tmp/install.log` for your reference until you reboot this system.

### G.1.3 Software Subset Load Errors

The software load procedure can fail for a number of reasons, including software inventory problems resulting from a corrupted distribution media, network errors during a RIS installation, and CD-ROM read errors during a CD-ROM install. To handle potential problems, the software load procedure makes two attempts to load software. If the initial attempt fails, a second attempt is made to load the specific software subsets that were not loaded during the first attempt.

**The installation procedure was not able to correctly install the *product\_name* software subsets. This may be the result of a corrupted distribution. Another attempt will be made to install this software.**

This message is displayed if one or more subsets fail during the first load attempt. The subset load procedure will then attempt to reload the failed subsets. Check the `/var/adm/smlogs/install.log` file for more information.

**The installation procedure successfully installed the mandatory software subsets. One or more optional subsets did not install correctly. This may be the result of a corrupted distribution. The installation will continue.**

This message is displayed if an optional subset fails to load after two attempts. The corrective action depends on the software load errors returned from the install procedure. You can find more information about the problem when the installation has completed. Use the `more` command to view the contents of the `/var/adm/smlogs/fverify.log` and `/var/adm/smlogs/setld.log` log files to review the software load errors. Once the problem had been resolved, use the `setld` utility to load the failed subsets. Refer to Chapter 9 for more information about installing optional subsets after an installation.

The installation procedure was not able to correctly install the mandatory software subsets. This may be the result of a corrupted distribution. This error is fatal, and causes the installation procedure to stop. Additional information regarding this error can be found in the following log files: `/var/tmp/install.log` and `/var/tmp/fverify.log`

This message is displayed if a mandatory subset fails to load after two attempts. A failed mandatory subset load is a fatal error and the installation process will not be able to continue until the problem has been resolved. Use the `more` command to view the contents of the `/var/tmp/install.log` and `/var/tmp/fverify.log` log files to review the software load errors. The files are written in the `/var` memory file system and will be available only until the installation is restarted or the system is rebooted.

## G.2 Update Installation Error Messages

The following sections describe error messages that you might encounter during an Update Installation.

### G.2.1 Update Installation Startup

The following error messages may display after invoking the `installupdate` command, but before the Update Installation interface (graphical or text-based) is displayed.

**You must have superuser privileges to run `installupdate`. You must be the user `root` to run the update install.**

The `/sbin/installupdate` command must be run as the user `root` in single-user mode. Shut down the system to single-user mode and restart the Update Installation.

**\*\*\* WARNING: Incorrect system state detected. \*\*\* Please shut down system to single user mode before attempting an update installation.**

The system must be in single-user mode in order for the update to run. Single-user mode can be reached by using the `shutdown` command. Refer to `shutdown(8)` for more information.

#### G.2.1.1 Update Installations from a CD-ROM

The errors described in this section may occur during an Update Installation from a CD-ROM.

**Please specify a block-special device file.**

The argument to the `installupdate` command must be a block-special file. Block special file names in systems running operating system versions earlier than Version 5.1 begin with `rz`.

**<mount point> is an invalid update installation mount point.**

The Update Installation could not find the installation information at the specified location either because the location is incorrect or the media at that location is not the operating system media.

**Cannot locate update information on /updmnt**

The Update Installation script could not be found in the default location /updmnt due to invalid or incorrect media or location of media.

**Update installation mount point already mounted: <mount-point search listing> Please unmount /updmnt manually.**

The Update Installation detected that there is already something at the Update Installation mount point. Enter the following command:

```
# cd /  
# umount /updmnt
```

Reenter the `installupdate` command.

**Could not unmount: <umount attempt error listing> Please unmount /updmnt manually.**

If for any reason you exit the Update Installation before completion, the Update Installation may be unable to unmount the distribution media properly. Enter the following command:

```
# cd /  
# umount /updmnt
```

**Cannot mount <media location supplied by user> on /updmnt. Check with the system manager of your host server.**

The distribution media location given as an argument to `installupdate` is incorrect. Check the location and retry `installupdate`.

### **G.2.1.2 Update Installations from Remote Installation Services (RIS)**

The errors described in this section may occur during an Update Installation from a RIS server.

**Cannot find <RIS client> in risdb file. Check with the system manager of <RIS server>.**

The client system is not registered on the RIS server. Register the client machine on the RIS server, then restart Update Installation.

**Could not retrieve RIS area information on <RIS\_server>. Exiting procedure...**

Either the Update Installation could not start the network, or the targeted RIS area is no longer accessible. In the first case, check the client machine's network settings. In the second case, check with your RIS administrator.

**Error starting <inet route gateway> Cannot continue with update installation.**

The network daemons could not start and the distribution media was specified as a network file system (NFS) or RIS. Check to ensure that the network is accessible to the system you want to update, then restart the Update Installation.

## G.2.2 Analysis Phase Error Messages

The following messages might be seen during the Update Installation analysis phases.

**Cannot create directory /var/tmp/update/risupdinfo**

The Update Installation makes local copies of the subset inventory files in the /var/tmp/update/risupdinfo directory to improve performance. This error may indicate that file system space is 99 percent or more full, and the update process could not create the directory. Perform disk space recovery procedures, such as deleting `core` files, extra kernel files, and all other unnecessary files to free up some disk space.

**Cannot locate the product mapping file <RIS product directory/rp\_mapping> on the RIS server <RIS server name>. Check with the system manager of the RIS server.**

The `rp_mapping` file maps a product name to a mount point. Without this file Update Installation cannot find the product for which it is registered. This message usually indicates a corrupt RIS area.

**<Operating system version> is currently installed on this system.**

This message indicates that you are attempting to update the operating system to the exact version of the operating system that is already installed. If you receive this message, you are given the option to continue the update or exit.

You must have one of the following products loaded on your system before you can update to *<new operating system version>*.

*<List of products>*

Please refer to the Installation Guide for additional information on these releases.

The Update Installation cannot update your current version of the operating system to the new version. To get to the new version, you may need to perform successive updates or perform a Full Installation.

**No installable subsets for this system found.**

The Update Installation could not find installable software subsets on the distribution media, which is most likely corrupted. If you are using a CD-ROM, contact your support representative for another one. If you are using a RIS server, notify the administrator who will have to create another RIS environment for the product you want to install.

**Error: Unable to retrieve the /tmp/updinfo file**

This file contains data used by the installation scripts. Bring your system back to multiuser mode, and restart the Update Installation process.

**A non-zero return status *<actual return code>* has been detected after execution of the *<user supplied script name>* program. This is fatal and causes the Update Installation procedure to stop.**

If you supplied a script within an `update_preinstall` or `update_postload` file, this message indicates that the script failed with a value other than 0 (zero). Check your script, and retry the Update Installation.

**Error opening file: `updblock.dat`**

The `updblock.dat` file contains the blocking layered products three-letter prefixes. This error resulted from a corrupt distribution media. If you are using a CD-ROM, contact your support representative for another one. If you are using a RIS server, notify the administrator who will have to create another RIS environment for the product you want to install.

The following errors may occur if your system does not have enough disk space to complete an Update Installation:

The Update Installation cannot save your kernel option selections. The kernel will be built with all mandatory and all optional kernel components. Use the `/usr/sbin/doconfig` command to select the desired optional kernel components and rebuild the kernel after the Update Installation completes.

There is not enough space to save your optional kernel components selections. Use the `doconfig` command after the installation is complete to build optional components into the kernel.

**An error occurred when attempting to write to the INIT\_OPS\_FILE. This is most likely due to insufficient disk space in the root file system**

Check the / (root) file system for `core` files, extra kernel files, and any unnecessary files that are taking up disk space and remove them to free up space. Perform any other disk space recovery steps that are appropriate for your site. When you have freed up space, restart the Update Installation.

**An error occurred while trying to open the input or output files in the call to `updmore`.**

This error message displays only from the text-based interface and indicates that either the input (list of available selections) or output (list of user selections) files could not be opened.

## G.3 Software Configuration Error Messages

Software configuration occurs after system reboot and is a process common to both Full and Update Installation. The following error messages can display during software configuration.

**`c_install: Cannot find /sbin/it.d/data/cinst.data`**

The data file that contains the list of installed software subsets to be configured could not be found. This file is written by the `setld` utility and indicates a possible corruption of the `setld` utility or the system disk on which the software was installed, or that the system disk has run out of space. This error is fatal.

**`dn_fix: name database [/etc/dfsc.dat] does not exist`**

**`dn_fix: name database [/etc/dfsl.dat] does not exist`**

The device file status `[cluster,local]` file, which contains hardware device attributes including the mapping of old-style device names (for example, `rz*`) to new-style device names (for example, `dsk*`) could not be found. These files are created dynamically by the `dsfmgr` program, and indicates a possible corruption of the `dsfmgr` program or the system disk on which the software was installed, or that the system disk has run out of space.



**dn\_fix: cannot create copy of <file> for recovery purposes**

The `dn_fix` program was not able to create successfully backup copies of the listed file prior to performing old-to-new device name conversions on the devices contained in this file. This may be the result of a corrupted system disk, or that the system disk has run out of space.

**dn\_fix: cannot create copy of <directory> for recovery purposes**

The `dn_fix` program was not able to create successfully a backup copy of the directory prior to performing old-to-new device name conversions on the devices contained in this directory. This may be the result of a corrupted system disk, or that the system disk has run out of space.

**An error was encountered when trying to convert from the old device names to the new device names in file: <file\_name>. No modifications have been made to the file. If you wish to use the new device names the file will have to be converted manually.  
The sed conversion script has been saved as: <file\_name>.CNVTsed  
The failed conversion file has been saved as: <file\_name>.CNVTfail  
The error which occurred was: <specific\_error>**

The `dn_fix` program could not convert successfully all the references to old device names in the listed file to the new device names. The error that occurred is listed for reference. This error is not fatal, and the old device names will continue to be used. After the installation process completes, the conversion of the failing file should be reattempted manually.

**An error was encountered when trying to convert from the old device names to the new device names in directory: <directory\_name>  
No modifications have been made to this directory. If you wish to use the new device names the directory will have to be converted manually.  
The failed conversion file has been saved as: <file\_name>.CNVTfail  
The error which occurred was: <error>**

The `dn_fix` program could not convert successfully all the references to old device names in the listed directory to the new device names. The error that occurred is listed for reference. This error is not fatal, and the old device names contained in this directory will continue to be used. After the installation process completes, the conversion of the failing directory should be reattempted manually.

**The merge routines which have failed are logged in `/var/adm/smlogs/dnconvert.FailCNVT`. To re-execute any of these routines, change directory to <script\_location> and re-execute all the routines in this directory.**

This message is output upon any failure of a conversion script to update the old device names to the new device names. The `/var/adm/smlogs/dnconvert.FailCNVT` file contains a list of the conversion scripts that failed and that should be reattempted manually.

after the installation procedure completes and the source of failure identified.

**The version switch from "active-version" to "new-version" could not be completed successfully. This error is not fatal, and the installation will continue. The following message was received from /usr/sbin/versw -switch:  
<details of error>**

The command `/usr/sbin/versw -switch`, which sets the version identifier for the newly installed version of the operating system, has failed. The text of the failure message is included. After the installation completes and the source of failure is identified, this command should be manually reattempted.

**Failed to configure one or more mailserver files.  
Please verify that the 'pop' and 'imap' user accounts have been set up in either the local or NIS password database and run this command again to complete the installation phase of the mailserver setup.**

This message indicates a failure in the attempt to update the modes, permissions, and inventory entries of POP and IMAP specific files. These files are shipped in the optional Additional Networking Services (OSFINET510) subset. This error is not fatal, and the following command should be reattempted after the installation process completes and you log in for the first time:

```
setld -c OSFINET510 MAILSERVERSETUP
```

---

# Glossary

This glossary provides definitions for many of the terms you may see while using the installation documentation. Although the majority of terms are related to the installation environment, other terms related to system setup and configuration are included.

## Special Characters

/

See *root*

## A

### **Advanced File System**

See *AdvFS (Advanced File System)*

### **AdvFS (Advanced File System)**

A journaled, local file system that provides higher availability and greater flexibility than traditional UNIX file systems. Using transaction journaling, AdvFS recovers file system integrity in seconds, rather than minutes, after an unexpected restart such as a power failure.

AdvFS journaling also provides increased file system integrity. AdvFS provides greater flexibility by allowing file sets (file systems) to share a single storage pool and enabling hard and soft file set quotas in addition to user and group quotas.

### **archive**

1. To store programs, data files, text files, and other types of files for safekeeping. For instance, the Update Installation Cleanup application provides the option to archive the backup files created by an Update Installation.
2. A repository for such files.

### **associated product**

See *layered product*

### **attribute-value pair**

The method used to define data in a configuration description file (CDF). A CDF file is organized as groupings of attribute-value pairs. An equal sign (=) separates each attribute and its associated value.

See also *CDF (Configuration Description File)*

**available swap space**

The amount of swap space not reserved by processes. In contrast, free swap space is everything except for the space actually in use. Available swap space is smaller than free swap space because it takes into account both the space that is in use and any reservations that processes may have made. Free swap space does not take reservations into account.

See also *swap space*

**B**

**base operating system**

The operating system without any additional third party or layered products installed. All software subsets that are located on the first CD-ROM comprise the base operating system.

**Berkeley Internet Name Domain**

See *BIND (Berkeley Internet Name Domain)*

**BIND (Berkeley Internet Name Domain)**

A distributed database name lookup service that lets you distribute the host database network wide. Also known as Domain Name Service (DNS).

See also *BIND client, BIND server*

**BIND client**

A computer that queries a BIND server for host name and host address information, interprets the responses, and passes the information to requesting applications.

See also *BIND (Berkeley Internet Name Domain)*

**BIND server**

A computer that is an authoritative source for information about one or more zones. The BIND server either maintains the master copy of the host's database for the zone or obtains the information required to serve the hosts database from another server.

See also *BIND (Berkeley Internet Name Domain)*

**block device**

A storage device that supports directory memory access (DMA) rather than character input/output.

**block special file**

A device special file that provides access to an input or output device and is capable of supporting a file system.

See also *device special file*

**boot time**

The time when the operating system is initializing. In the case of a cold boot, the hardware also is initialized.

**bootable**

Having the ability to load and initialize the operating system

**bootp (Bootstrap Protocol)**

A protocol that provides a framework for passing configuration information to hosts on a TCP/IP network. The bootp protocol allows a client machine to discover its own IP address, the address of a server host, and the name of a file to be loaded into memory and executed. The bootstrap operation can be thought of as consisting of two phases. The first phase is address determination and bootfile selection and the second phase is file transfer.

**Bourne shell**

The command interpreter and interpreted programming language originally developed by Steve Bourne.

See also *shell*

## C

**C shell**

A command interpreter and interpreted programming language developed at the University of California at Berkeley; so named because many of its constructs resemble the equivalent C language constructs.

See also *shell*

**CDE (Common Desktop Environment)**

A graphical user interface for interacting with the operating system. The CDE interface was jointly developed and is based on industry standards, including the X Consortium's X Window System and the Open Software Foundation's Motif interface.

**CDE front panel**

On systems with graphics capabilities, a centrally located window on the CDE desktop, which contains icons for accessing system management applications and utilities. The Front Panel occupies all desktop workspaces.

**CDF (Configuration Description File)**

A data file that is used to clone systems. Two separate CDFs store the installation and configuration characteristics of an installed and configured system. Installation information is stored in an `install.cdf` file, which is created automatically whenever a Full Installation is performed.

Configuration information is stored in a `config.cdf` file, which is created manually using the `sysman -clone -save` command. Both of these files are located in the `/var/adm/smlogs` directory by default.

See also *Installation Cloning, Configuration Cloning*

### **CDSL**

Context Dependent Symbolic Link. A special form of symbolic link that dynamically resolves to a member-specific file, depending upon the cluster member accessing the file. CDSLs make it possible to maintain system-specific configuration and data files on file systems shared by a cluster, but they are also resident on single systems. If CDSLs are removed by accident, your system will not function correctly in a cluster. While this is not a problem for stand-alone systems, you may not be able to add the system as a member of a working cluster at some future time.

See also *cluster, member specific file*

### **character device**

A data storage or transfer device that manipulates data in increments of a single character; for example, a terminal.

### **character special file**

A file through which processes can access either a character-stream oriented I/O interface or an unstructured (raw) device, such as a communication line or an unbuffered magnetic tape or disk.

### **checksum**

A sum of bits or digits used primarily for verification purposes, summed according to an arbitrary set of rules. The checksum verifies the integrity of data.

### **client**

A computer system that uses resources provided by another computer system called a server.

### **cloning**

A process that uses the installation or configuration characteristics in a configuration description file (CDF) generated from one system to create an exact replica on another system.

See also *CDF (Configuration Description File)*

### **cluster**

A loosely coupled collection of servers that share storage and other resources that make applications and data highly available. A cluster consists of communications media, member systems, peripheral devices, and applications. The systems communicate over a high-performance interconnect.

See also *cluster member*

**cluster member**

The basic computing resource in a cluster. A member system physically must be connected to a cluster interconnect and at least one shared SCSI bus. The connection manager dynamically determines cluster membership based on communications among cluster members.

**Common Desktop Environment**

See *CDE (Common Desktop Environment)*

**conditional mandatory subset**

A software subset that is required for the proper function of the operating system only when certain hardware or software is detected during the installation procedure which makes the software mandatory.

See also *mandatory software subset*

**configuration**

1. The machines, devices, and programs that make up a data processing system or network.
2. The act of making a subsystem, or a set of subsystems, or services available for use by a running operating system.
3. The set of configured subsystems in an operating system.

**Configuration Cloning**

The process that duplicates the configuration from a previously configured system onto one or more target systems, eliminating the need to perform the configuration tasks as a separate operation. Configuration information such as network setup and services, mail setup, printer setup, and internet access can be cloned from one system to another.

See also *Installation Cloning, CDF (Configuration Description File)*

**configuration description file**

See *CDF (Configuration Description File)*

**console mode**

When the system is halted, the operating system is no longer running, and the console subsystem is started. This state is also known as console mode and is recognizable by the console mode prompt, which is represented by three right arrow characters (>>>). The console mode prompt is sometimes called *triple arrows*.

**core file**

A file that is created when an application terminates abnormally or the system crashes. A `core` file may be useful to debug a problem with an application or system that crashed, but otherwise, `core` files should be

deleted because they consume a large amount of disk space. A `core` file is created in the directory from which the application was invoked.

See also *crash file*

#### **crash file**

A file that is created when the system crashes. System crashes may be caused by a hardware malfunction, a kernel failure, a software error, or a variety of other reasons. The `core` file created by the crash may be useful to debug why the system crashed, but otherwise, core files should be deleted because they consume a large amount of disk space. Additional crash data is stored in the `/var/adm/crash` directory.

#### **custom partition table**

A disk partition table that differs from the recommended partition table. Systems that are shipped with factory installed software (FIS) typically use a custom partition table because of the many layered products that are installed in addition to the base operating system. Customizing a partition table lets you divide a disk in a fashion best suited to your needs.

See also *partition table, recommended partition table*

## **D**

#### **Dataless Management Services**

See *DMS (Dataless Management Services)*

#### **DCE (Distributed Computing Environment)**

A standard defined by The Open Group for distributed computing that defines a uniform set of services that share certain global properties for common naming, security, time synchronization, system availability, access to data, and system management. DCE enables applications and data on heterogeneous systems to work together.

#### **default**

Any value that is set automatically by an application or process.

#### **default partition**

1. The partition used by a system as the default boot partition.
2. The physical portion of a disk that usually is assigned by the installation process to hold a specific file system.

See also *partition*

#### **default file system layout**

When the `/` (`root`) and `/usr` file systems and a single swap area, `swap1`, are installed on the same disk in the `a`, `g`, and `b` disk partitions, respectively.

See also *file system layout*



**default partition table**

The disk partitions that are defined in the `/etc/disktab` file or, in the absence of an entry in that file, the disk driver itself. The default partition table varies with disk type because it depends upon the size of the disk itself. The `disklabel -p` command is used to view a disk's default partition table. Every supported disk has a preset default partition table, but it is not recommended to use it during a Full Installation.

See also *partition table*

**dependent subset**

A subset that requires the presence of other subsets in order to function properly. Dependencies between subsets are evaluated by a subset's software control program (SCP), which is controlled by the `setld` command.

See also *software subset*

**device**

1. The general name for any peripheral hardware connected to the processor that is capable of receiving, storing, or transmitting data. For example, card readers, line printers, and terminals are record-oriented devices. Magnetic tape devices and disks are examples of mass storage devices. Terminal line interfaces and interprocessor links are examples of communication devices.
2. The files in the `/dev` directory that are used to access physical devices are themselves sometimes called devices.

**device name**

The name or address used to access a physical disk. Device names are located in the `/dev` directory.

**device special file**

A file used by processes to access hardware devices. For example, a printer is accessed through a device special file.

See also *block special file*, *character special file*

**disk label**

The disk information, usually located in sector 0 (zero), that includes the disk geometry and partition divisions. This information is used by the system disk driver and the boot program to identify a drive, and to determine how to program a drive and where to find the file systems.

See also *partition*

**disk partition**

See *partition*

**distribution media**

The media that is used to make software kits available for installation. Typical media types on which to distribute software include CD-ROMs, RIS servers, or locally mounted disks.

**DMS (Dataless Management Services)**

A service provided whereby a server computer system maintains the / (root), /usr, and /var file systems for client computer systems connected to the server through a local area network (LAN).

**DMS area**

A reserved disk area that physically is connected to a DMS server and that contains multiple copies of the DMS root area, one for each registered client.

**DMS client**

A computer system whose system disk area physically is connected to a DMS server rather than to the client itself and is accessed across the network by the client.

**domain**

1. Any single element of a domain name. Using `host1.nyc.bigcorp.com` as an example: `nyc.bigcorp.com` is the domain and `host1` is the unique host name.
2. Any qualified portion of a domain name. Qualified means that it is fully specified all the way to the root domain. Using `host1.nyc.bigcorp.com` as an example: `nyc.bigcorp.com`, `bigcorp.com`, and `.com` are qualified domains.
3. The domain, and all the subdomains beneath it, down to the leaf nodes of the domain space tree. Using `nyc.bigcorp.com` as an example: `nyc.bigcorp.com` is the name of the domain, and the domain encompasses all the hosts located in `nyc` (New York City).

**E****ed editor**

A line-oriented program for modifying the contents of text files. The program operates by accepting commands from the user. For example, issuing the command `s/Unix/UNIX/g` substitutes each instance of the string `Unix` on the current line with the string `UNIX`.

**editor**

A program for modifying the contents of text files. Full-screen editors, such as `vi`, use video display terminals to display several lines of the file being manipulated; they allow the user to move the cursor to a specific location and change the text there. Line editors, such as `ed`, work on a line-by-line basis. Stream editors, such as `sed`, work by applying commands from a

previously prepared list (called a script) instead of by accepting commands from the user.

### **Emacs**

A text editor developed by the Free Software Foundation that is available for all UNIX systems, although it is not a standard part of Berkeley UNIX or System V. It is included with this UNIX operating system.

### **ex editor**

A line-oriented program for modifying the contents of text files. The `ex` editor is an extended version of the `ed` editor.

## **F**

### **factory installed software**

See *FIS (Factory Installed Software)*

### **file system**

The hierarchical structure of directories and files on a physical or logical mass storage device. The hierarchy starts with the `/` (`root`) directory. In this UNIX operating system, the standard UNIX file systems are `/`, `/usr`, and `/var`. The `/var` file system optionally can be created as an area under the `/usr` file system.

### **file system layout**

The location of the basic UNIX file systems and swap areas: `/` (`root`), `/usr`, `/var`, `swap1`, and `swap2` on one or more disks.

### **file system type**

Defines how a file system is structured and managed. The Full Installation process offers the Advanced File System (AdvFS) and UNIX File System (UFS) as supported file system types.

See also *AdvFS (Advanced File System)*, *UFS (UNIX File System)*

### **file type conflict**

When the Update Installation process finds a file type that is different from the file type as it was shipped in the previous version of the operating system. A file type conflict occurs when the file type of a file, directory, symbolic link, block device, or pipe was modified from the file type originally shipped. The Update Installation cannot install the new file type without overwriting the modified file type. This feature preserves the integrity of the software to be updated.

### **firmware**

The software stored in silicon (for example, ROM or EPROM) on a system's CPU board. Firmware is also known as console code. Firmware is the first software that runs when a system is turned on, and it directly controls all

hardware. Each hardware platform uses a different set of firmware. The firmware on a platform is the same regardless of the operating system installed on the platform. Thus, firmware is platform dependent, but is not operating system independent.

#### **FIS (Factory Installed Software)**

A process that preinstalls the operating system at the factory before a system is shipped from the manufacturing facility. Typically, FIS systems are installed with all mandatory and all optional operating system software and a variety of layered products. Included in the box with the preinstalled system is the *Factory Installed Software Information Sheet*, which describes the software products that have been installed and the disks and disk partitions that were used for the file system layout.

#### **Full Installation**

The process by which a brand new version of the operating system is installed onto a system. A Full Installation creates new file systems and swap space and overwrites existing system and user-created files on the disk partitions where the new file systems and swap spaces are to be installed. After the Full Installation, the system must be configured for general use.

#### **fully qualified host name**

A host name containing one or more labels separated by a period that uniquely defines a computer. A label is a string which begins with a letter and contains letters, digits, and hyphens and ends with a letter or a digit. A label can have between 2 and 63 characters, inclusive. A fully qualified host name can have a maximum of 254 characters. For example, `host1.nyc.bigcorp.com` is a fully qualified host name.

See also *domain*

## **G**

#### **generic kernel**

The kernel image that includes kernel support for all system types, devices, and software options. The generic kernel file, `/genvmunix`, can be booted if the tailored kernel, `/vmunix`, is damaged.

See also *tailored kernel*

## **H**

#### **halt**

A type of system shutdown that stops the processor but does not reboot the system. When the system is halted, the operating system is no longer running, and the console subsystem is started. This state is also known as console mode and is recognizable by the console mode prompt, which is

represented by three right arrow characters (>>>). A system can be halted by using the `shutdown -h now` command.

### **host**

1. The primary or controlling computer in a communications network.
2. Any computer system attached to a network.

### **host name**

The name given to a computer. Lowercase and uppercase letters (a-z and A-Z), numbers (0-9), periods, and dashes are permitted in host names. Valid host names contain from 2 to 63 characters with the first character being a letter.

### **HTML (HyperText Markup Language)**

The coding (markup) inserted in a file intended for display on a World Wide Web browser that tells the browser how to display the words on a web page. The markup is done with *tags*, which are command words enclosed in angle brackets. For example, the tag `<P>` creates a new paragraph; the tag `<TABLE>` begins the formatting of a table. Although the World Wide Web Consortium (W3C) promotes the standardization of HTML, both Netscape and Microsoft browsers currently implement some features differently and provide nonstandard extensions.

### **HyperText Markup Language**

See *HTML (HyperText Markup Language)*

I

### **i18n**

The abbreviation for *internationalization*. Worldwide Language Support (WLS) software is installed in the `/usr/i18n` directory, which can be created as its own file system or can be created as a symbolic link to another file system.

See also *WLS (Worldwide Language Support)*

### **init**

A command that initializes the system by creating and controlling processes. This command also polls the hardware so that it is known to the Full Installation process. The processes run by the `init` command at each run level are defined in the `/etc/inittab` file.

### **init process**

The root process created by the system that performs system administration tasks, such as spawning login processes and handling the orderly shutdown from multiuser to single-user mode.

**inode**

The internal structure that describes the individual files in the operating system. There is one inode for each file. An inode contains the node, type, owner, and location of a file. A table of inodes is stored in strategic locations of a file system.

**inode number**

A number specifying a particular inode file in the file system.

**Installation Cloning**

The process that duplicates the installation characteristics (that is, disk selection, file system layout, and installed software) from an installed system onto one or more systems with the same or similar hardware configuration. Installation cloning is performed directly from a Full Installation.

See also *CDF (Configuration Description File)*

**internet address**

A unique 32-bit number that identifies a host's connection to an internet network. An internet address consists of a network number and a host number.

**Internet Protocol**

See *IP (Internet Protocol)*

**IP (Internet Protocol)**

The network layer protocol for the Internet protocol suite that provides the basis for the connectionless, best-effort packet delivery service. IP includes the Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) as an integral part. The Internet protocol suite is referred to as TCP/IP because IP is one of the two most fundamental protocols.

**IP address**

A 32-bit quantity used to represent a point of attachment in an Internet. Periods (.) delineate each portion of the address.

See also *IP (Internet Protocol)*

**K****kernel**

The core part of the operating system that controls processes, system scheduling, memory management, input and output services, device management, network communications, and the organization of the file systems.

**Korn shell**

A command interpreter and interpreted programming language developed by David Korn. The Korn shell (`ksh`) is semantically an extended version of the Bourne shell, with constructs and commands to implement enhanced features, including job control and command history recall. The POSIX shell is a superset of the Korn shell.

See also *shell*

**ksh**

The command that invokes the Korn shell; the name of the executable file that is the shell.

See also *Korn shell*, *shell*

**L****LAN (Local Area Network)**

A group of two or more computer systems (hosts) connected by a transmission medium, such as an Ethernet cable, token ring, or FDDI. Each host is connected to the transmission medium by a hardware interface. A LAN is a data communications network that spans a physically limited area, such as a single office building. It usually is owned by the organization it services and provides high-bandwidth communication over inexpensive media.

See also *network*

**layered product**

A software product that is compatible with the operating system but is not part of the base operating system. A layered software product is installed, or layered, along with the operating system. Layered software products are often shipped on the Associated Products compact discs (CD-ROMs) that can accompany a new release of the operating system. In most cases, layered software products are installed from the SysMan Menu or by using the `setld` command.

See also *base operating system*, *setld*, *SysMan Menu*

**local area network**

See *LAN (Local Area Network)*

**log in**

To begin using a computer system, usually by entering a login name and password to gain access to and communicate with the operating system as an authorized user.

**Logical Storage Manager**

See *LSM (Logical Storage Manager)*

**LSM (Logical Storage Manager)**

LSM is an integrated, host-based disk storage management tool that protects against data loss, improves disk input/output performance, and customizes the disk configuration. LSM builds virtual disks, called volumes, on top of UNIX disks. A volume is a special device that contains data used by file systems, databases, or other applications. LSM transparently places a volume between a physical disk and an application, which then operates on the volume rather than on the physical disk.

**LSM private region**

The disk partition that contains LSM configuration information for the entire system. Multiple private regions on multiple disks provide backup functionality in the unlikely event of a disk failure. The LSM private region requires 2 MB of disk space.

See also *LSM (Logical Storage Manager)*

**M****mandatory kernel component**

That portion of the kernel that is required for the proper operation of the base operating system.

See also *optional kernel component, base operating system*

**mandatory software subset**

A portion of software that is the minimum required to install and run a software product.

See also *base operating system, optional software subset*

**member specific file**

A file that contains data specific to a particular cluster member. The contents of a member-specific file differ for each cluster member, and each member has its own copy of a member-specific file.

**merge file**

A program used by the Update Installation process to automatically merge new functionality from the new version of the operating system into an existing customized file.

See also *protected system file, .PreMRG file*

**mount**

To attach a file system to an existing directory to make the file system available for use. File systems are mounted by the `mount` command.

See also *unmount*



**mount point**

A directory that is the name of a mounted file system.

**multiprocessor**

A system with two or more processors sharing common physical memory.

**N****name service**

The service provided to client processes for identifying peer processes for communications purposes.

**network**

Two or more computing systems that are linked for the purpose of exchanging information and sharing resources.

**Network File System**

See *NFS (Network File System)*

**.new.. file**

A system file with this prefix allows a new version of a protected system file be delivered to the system during an Update Installation without overwriting the existing, and possibly customized version of the file.

See also *protected system file*, *.proto.. file*

**NFS (Network File System)**

A service that allows a system (the server) to make file systems available across a network for mounting by other systems (clients). When a client mounts an NFS file system, the client's users see the file system as if it were local to the client.

**NFS mounted**

Refers to a file system that is mounted over a network by NFS rather than being physically connected (local) to the system on which it is mounted.

See also *NFS (Network File System)*

**O****obsolete file**

A file that was shipped in a previous version of the operating system that is no longer shipped with the current version of the operating system. Removing obsolete files does no harm to the operating system and helps save disk space.

**optional kernel component**

A portion of the kernel that is not required for the proper operation of the mandatory portions of the base operating system but may be required for the proper operation of optional portions of the operating system or layered software products. Optional kernel components may also provide some additional functionality required by a user (for instance, the Packet Filter Driver).

See also *base operating system, kernel, layered product*

**optional software subset**

A variety of software applications that can be installed to enhance the base operating system but are not required for the proper operation of the operating system. A prime example of optional software subsets are the UNIX reference pages; they are not required, but are a useful addition.

See also *base operating system, mandatory software subset*

**P****page**

A fixed-size unit of physical memory.

**partition**

The physical portions of a disk that are named a through h. Disks are divided into sections that are then assigned to hold various file systems. By convention, the / (`root`) file system is always located on the first partition, named a. The /usr file system is on a different partition, often the g partition. The c partition usually represents the entire disk. Each partition may differ in size and can overlap other partitions. Two overlapping partitions cannot be used at the same time. Disks can have up to eight partitions. Partitions are sometimes known as *slices*.

**partition table**

The component of a disk label that specifies how a physical disk is divided or partitioned.

**password**

A string of characters that in conjunction with other information, such as the login name, uniquely confirms a user's identity to the system. Passwords should contain a combination of upper and lower case letters, numbers, and special characters and must be a minimum of six to a maximum of 16 characters in length.

**path**

An ordered list of the directories in which the shell searches for the executable files named by commands that are not entered with a pathname and are not shell built-in commands.

**pathname**

The name of a file, concatenated onto a list of the directories through which access to that file is achieved; hence, the complete name of the file. Absolute pathnames begin at the root directory and are written with an initial slash (for example, `/usr/users/rolf/myfile.txt`). Relative pathnames begin at the user's working directory and are written without the initial slash (for example, `rolf/myfile.txt`).

**PostScript**

The registered trademark for a language developed by Adobe Systems, Inc., for specifying the formatting of typeset documents or displays. An encapsulated PostScript file is a file that follows a standard for embedding PostScript files into other PostScript files.

**.PreMRG file**

A backup copy of a protected system file as it existed before an Update Installation. These files are appended with a `.PreMRG` extension. If any system file customizations were not successfully merged, refer to the `*.PreMRG` version of the file to include those customizations in the postmerged file on the updated system.

See also *protected system file*

**.PreUPD file**

A backup copy of an unprotected customized file. Before an Update Installation takes place, unprotected system files that are found to have been customized are copied and saved to the same file name with a `.PreUPD` extension. If you have customized these files in any way, you manually add the customizations into the new version of the system file when the Update Installation is complete.

See also *unprotected system file*

**protected system file**

A customized system file whose customizations automatically are merged into the new version of the file on the updated system. A merge is performed only when the file previously has been customized by the user or the file has been modified by Compaq. The Update Installation process creates a backup `*.PreMRG` file for reference purposes in case of a merge failure. Protected system files are system files that are expected to be customized, for example, `/etc/passwd` and `/etc/host`.

See also *.PreMRG file*

**.proto.. file**

A file that is modified to deliver site-wide customizations of system files to DMS client systems. Performing this customization before registering clients to the DMS environment reduces the amount of customization required at each client. There are several files with `.proto..` extensions located in the DMS environment `/var/adm/dms/dmsN.alpha` in the `/etc`, `/bin`, `/var/adm/X11`, and `/` directories that can be modified.

See also *DMS (Dataless Management Services)*

**Q****Quick Setup**

A system management application that lets you configure basic licensing, networking, printing, and mail services. The Quick Setup application is accessed from the System Setup checklist by entering `/usr/sbin/checklist` on the command line.

**R****reboot**

To bring the system down to console mode and restart the operating system.

**recommended partition table**

The way a disk is partitioned by the Full Installation process when the default file system layout is used. The recommended partition table is designed to hold the entire operating system on one disk and allow room on the disk for some additional software as well as enough extra space for future Update Installations. On a 1 GB disk, the recommended partition table is:

- The `/` (`root`) file system is 128 MB on the `a` partition.
- The first swap area, `swap1`, is 128 MB on the `b` partition.
- The `usr` file system is 745 MB on the `g` partition. The `/var` file system is located in `/usr`.

On a 2 GB disk, the recommended partition table sizes are doubled; that is 256 MB for `/`, 1490 MB for `/usr`, and 256 MB for swap space. On disks that are 3 GB and larger, the recommended partition table sizes are tripled; that is, 384 MB for `/`, 2235 MB for `/usr`, and 384 MB for swap space.

See also *default file system layout, partition table*

**reference page**

One of a collection of files containing documentation on all commands, system calls, library routines, and so forth. Reference pages are often called manual pages or `man` pages.

**RIS (Remote Installation Services)**

An application that is used to install software kits across a network instead of using locally mounted distribution media. If the RIS software subset is installed, the RIS application is invoked by entering `/usr/sbin/ris`.

See also *network, RIS (Remote Installation Services)*

**RIS area**

A reserved disk area physically connected to a RIS server, containing one or more installable software kits.

See also *RIS (Remote Installation Services)*

**RIS client**

A computer system that has permission to install software across the network by accessing kits stored in the server's RIS area. Client systems are registered on the RIS server to software kits through the use of the RIS application.

See also *RIS (Remote Installation Services)*

**RIS server**

A computer system that serves other computers by providing software kits for them to install. The software is stored on disks belonging to the server and is accessed across the network by the RIS clients.

See also *RIS (Remote Installation Services)*

**root**

1. The login name for the superuser (system administrator).

See also *superuser*

2. The name applied to the topmost directory in the UNIX system's tree-like file structure; hence, the beginning of an absolute pathname. The root directory is represented in pathnames by an initial slash (/); a reference to the root directory itself consists of a single slash.

See also *pathname*

**root directory**

See *root*

**root file system**

The topmost file system under which all other file systems are mounted. The root file system contains the operating system files that get the rest of the system running.

**root login**

See *root*

## S

### **script**

1. A nonbinary program that is interpreted and executed by a specified shell.
2. In the `sed` editor, a list of editing commands to be applied to the input file.

### **SCSI (Small Computer System Interface)**

An industry-standard bus for small systems such as personal computers, small multiuser systems, or workstations. SCSI-based devices can be configured in a series with multiple devices on the same bus.

### **server**

A computer system that provides software or services to one or more other computers called clients.

See also *client*

### **setld**

A command used for installing, managing, and removing software subsets on a system that is already running the operating system.

See also *software subset*

### **sh**

The command that invokes the Bourne shell.

### **shell**

A program that interprets commands entered by the user, invoking programs and calling for system resources as needed.

See also *Bourne shell*, *C shell*, *Korn shell*

### **single-user mode**

An operating system mode that prohibits user logins, stops system services and daemons (for networking and graphical windowing environments), stops any running processes, and unmounts file systems.

### **software subset**

A software kit module that is installed or removed with the `setld` command. A subset usually consists of a collection of related files, such as an application and its support files.

See also *setld*

### **su**

A command that substitutes another user's login for that of the user who invoked the command, logging in the invoking user under the substituted login. The invoking user must know the login password for the user whose

login is being substituted. If no other user's login is specified, the command substitutes the root login.

**subset dependency**

The condition in which a given subset requires the presence, or lack thereof, of other subsets in order to function properly. Dependencies between subsets is evaluated by a subset control program (SCP) under control of the `setld` command.

**superuser**

A user possessing privileges to override the normal restrictions on file access, process control, and so forth. A user who possesses these privileges becomes a superuser by issuing the `su` command, or by logging into the system as the user `root`.

**swap space**

Disk space used to hold modified memory from an idle or low priority process in order to reclaim the physical memory that the process is using.

**symbolic link**

A file that contains the pathname of another file or directory and acts as a pointer to that file or directory. The symbolic link can occur within the same file system or across file systems; also called a soft link or sym link.

**SysMan Menu**

A menu of system management tasks organized in a tree-like hierarchy with branches of general functionality and leaves for actual tasks. Selecting a leaf opens a dialog for performing the task. Depending on the user's display device, the SysMan Menu provides either a graphical or text-based interface. The SysMan Menu is invoked from the command line by entering `/usr/sbin/sysman` or from the CDE Application Manager if your system is running the CDE desktop.

**system disk**

The disk containing the `/` (`root`) file system is sometimes known as the system disk.

**system file**

A file that is resident on a system after an installation of the operating system. A system file contains information that is important for the proper operation of the operating system.

**T**

**tailored kernel**

The kernel image that is created for a system, which includes specific support for the hardware and software options installed on the system.

A tailored kernel is automatically built for the system at the end of the installation process by the `/usr/sbin/doconfig` program, and includes mandatory only, all, or customized kernel components as part of the tailored kernel build.

See also *kernel*

### **tar (tape archive)**

A command that makes portable copies of files for archiving or transfer to another system. By default, the `tar` command writes its archive files on the system's primary magnetic tape unit.

### **target system**

In the cloning process, the system that is cloned from another system.

## **U**

### **UFS (UNIX File System)**

The standard file system type that is characterized by a hierarchical structure, the ability to create and delete files, dynamic growth of files, protection of file data, and the treatment of peripheral devices.

See also *AdvFS (Advanced File System)*, *file system*

### **UNIX file system**

See *UFS (UNIX File System)*

### **UNIX shell**

An option that is offered during a Full Installation as a way to access the standard UNIX command line interface. Its primary purpose is to provide a way to perform disk and file system maintenance before or during a Full Installation. The UNIX shell provides a way to access all UNIX commands that help you recover from serious problems such as `/(root)` file system corruption and enables you to perform general file system and disk maintenance tasks.

### **unmount**

The process that announces to the system that a file system previously mounted on a specified directory is to be removed. Only the person who mounted the particular file system or a superuser can unmount it. A file system is unmounted with the `umount` command.

See also *mount*

### **unprotected system file**

A customized system file, usually binary, whose customizations are not merged automatically into the new version of the file on the updated system. Customizations are preserved in a file with a `*.PreUPD` extension.



If unprotected system files are altered in any way, customizations must be merged manually into the new version of the system file when the Update Installation is complete by using the `*.PreUPD` version as a guide. Unprotected system files are system files that are not expected to be customized by a user, for example, `/usr/bin/X11/netstape`.

See also *.PreUPD file*

### **Update Installation**

Updates a system running a previous version of the operating system to a more recent released version of the operating system. An Update Installation preserves disk partitions, file systems, file customizations, network and print environment, user accounts, user created files, and any other system setup that may have been done on the system.

### **URL (Uniform Resource Locator)**

The address of a file or other resource accessible on the Internet. The type of file or resource depends on the Internet application protocol. For example, using the HyperText Transfer Protocol (HTTP), the file can be an HTML page, an image file, or a program such as a CGI application or Java applet. Such an address would look like this: `http://www.compaq.com`, which is the URL for the Compaq corporate web site.

### **user-supplied file**

A file that is searched for and executed during a Full or Update Installation. User-supplied files can be used to extend the installation process by applying customizations either before, during, or after the installation. The file can contain scripts, executables, or programs. The Full Installation and Update Installation processes always look for these files, and if the files are properly named and are put in the right location, they are executed when found.

### **/usr file system**

A file system in which some components of the operating system and applications are stored. Users' home directories are sometimes also located in a subdirectory of `/usr`.

## **V**

### **version**

The number assigned to a particular release of the base operating system or to layered software products.

See also *base operating system, layered product*

### **vi editor**

A full-screen text editor. The `vi` editor is a modal editor. In command mode, it accepts commands for cursor movement, text deletion, and so forth. To insert text into the file, the user gives the editor a command that places the

editor in input mode, and all keystrokes thereafter are interpreted as input data until the Escape key is pressed.

## **W**

### **WLS (Worldwide Language Support)**

The set of software subsets that provide support for various native languages and countries. Installing WLS software subsets enables software developers to develop internationalized software and lets users work in their native language.

### **Worldwide Language Support**

See *WLS (Worldwide Language Support)*

---

# Index

## A

---

Acrobat Reader  
installing, 8-4  
using to read documentation, 8-5

adding  
peripheral devices, 5-10

adding optional software  
during update installation, 2-2

adobe  
font metric file, C-9

Advanced File System  
( *See* AdvFS )

AdvFS  
advscan utility, 7-9  
building new kernel if installed  
using setld, 9-13  
kernel modules, C-7  
kernel objects, C-7  
reconstructing /etc/fdmns directory,  
7-9  
software subset for system  
administrator commands, C-13

advscan utility, 7-9

analysis phase  
of update installation, 2-6

Analysis Tool with Object Modification  
( *See* ATOM )

anonymous FTP of firmware, 3-3,  
5-7

ARC console  
switching to SRM console, 5-4

archiving  
obsolete files during update  
installation, 3-9

area

setting, 6-14

associated product  
installing, D-1

associated products  
updating whatis database after  
installing, D-3

Asynchronous Transfer Mode  
( *See* ATM )

ATM  
adapter installation, 5-9  
kernel header and common files,  
C-7  
kernel modules, C-7  
kernel objects, C-7  
software subset for commands, C-8

ATM adapter  
rebuilding the kernel, 9-13

ATOM  
performance analysis, C-11

automatic reboot, 7-11

## B

---

back up system  
before installation, 5-5

base operating system software  
subsets, C-1

basic X environment, C-16

bookmark conversion, 8-4

books  
viewing online with Acrobat Reader,  
8-5  
viewing online with Netscape  
Navigator, 8-2

boot  
generic kernel, 5-9

- to multiuser mode, 6-49
- boot command sequence
  - during full installation, 6-45
- boot\_osflags variable, 6-45
- bootdef\_dev variable, 6-45
- booting system
  - full installation, 6-4
- building a new kernel
  - after using setld, 9-13
- building the kernel
  - during installation, 6-24

## C

---

- C2 security
  - graphical user interface, C-13
  - software subset for, C-13
- calculator, C-19
- calendar, C-19
- CD-ROM
  - as installation media, 1-5
  - contents of, B-1
  - copying documentation files from, 8-6
  - determining device name, 6-5
  - device busy message, B-3
  - errors during update installation, G-10
  - mount instructions, B-2
  - mounting via /etc/fstab file, 3-7
  - problems removing from drive, B-3
  - unmounting before removing, B-3
  - updating firmware from, 5-6
- CDE
  - additional applications, C-16
  - invoking Netscape Navigator, 8-2
  - mail interface, C-8
  - reference pages for, C-10
  - software development, C-11
  - software subset for, C-16
- CDSL, 3-3
- clock
  - setting the system time, 6-13
- clock application, C-19
- cluster
  - documentation, 7-9
  - installation procedures, 1-4
  - installing software, 9-11
  - member0, 9-12
  - recovering from software load and delete failures, 9-12
  - removing software from, 9-6
  - rolling upgrade, 2-2
- cluster rolling upgrade
  - running upadmin utility, 3-24
- commands
  - doconfig, 3-15, 5-9
  - ed
    - ( See editor )
  - history, 6-8
  - init, 6-49
  - isacfg, 5-8
  - setld, 2-2, 9-4, 9-7
    - listing installed software subsets, 9-5
  - shutdown, 5-5
  - sysman, 7-7
  - vi
    - ( See editor )
- Common Desktop Environment
  - ( See CDE )
- completion time
  - for update installation, 2-8
- computer aided system tutorial, C-5
- conditionally mandatory software subsets
  - defined, C-1
- configuration cloning
  - during full installation, 4-5
- configuration description file
  - found during full installation, 6-8
  - install.cdf validation errors, G-8
- conflicting layered products, 3-10
- conflicts
  - file type, 3-15
- console variables
  - full installation, 6-2
- consvar console variable

- on multiprocessor platforms, 7–10
- context dependent symbolic links  
( *See* CDSL )
- copying
  - HTML files to disk, 8–6
  - online documentation to disk, 8–6
  - PDF files to disk, 8–6
- core files
  - removal of, 3–19
- crash files
  - removing, 3–19
- custom file system layout, 6–34
  - minimum partition sizes, 6–36
  - partitioning disks, 6–37
- custom kernel creation
  - as update installation option, 3–9
- custom setup application, 7–6
- Custom Setup application, 7–4

## D

---

- data
  - preserving during installation, 6–40
- Dataless Management Services  
( *See* DMS )
- date and time
  - entering for the system, 6–13
- DECEvent
  - software subset for, C–13
- DECwindows
  - additional applications, C–16
  - fonts, C–16
  - mail interface, C–8
- default file system layout, 6–27
- demo X applications, C–16
- dependencies
  - between software subsets, 6–23
- device busy message, B–3
- device name
  - how names are assigned, A–3

- mapping old to new for update
  - installation, A–5
  - mounting twice, A–5
  - naming conventions, A–1
  - of CD-ROM drive, 6–5
  - preserving during full installation, A–4
  - worldwide ID, A–3
- device names
  - changes during update installation, 3–22
- device special files, A–2
- directory
  - /updmnt mount point, G–11
- disk
  - determining worldwide ID, A–6
  - identifying during full installation, 4–4
  - naming convention, A–1
  - preserving data on during installation, 6–40
- disk name
  - preserving during full installation, A–4
- disk partition
  - for LSM private region, 6–39
  - minimum size of file systems, 6–36
- disk partitioning
  - dynamic, 4–2
- disk space
  - required for update installation, 3–18
- disk space recovery
  - during update installation, 3–19
- displaying
  - online documentation
    - with Acrobat Reader, 8–5
    - with Netscape Navigator, 8–2
- DMS
  - software subset for, C–8
- doconfig command, 3–15, 5–9

- running after installing subsets using setld, 9–13
- document preparation software subset, C–16
- documentation
  - formats, 8–1
  - online
    - displaying online with Acrobat Reader, 8–5
    - displaying online with Netscape Navigator, 8–2
  - online documentation set, 8–1
  - software subsets for supplemental, C–13
  - system administration and configuration, 7–9
  - using Netscape Navigator to view, 8–1
  - viewers, 8–1
  - viewing from CD-ROM, 8–1
  - viewing with Acrobat Reader, 8–4
  - viewing with Netscape Navigator, 8–2
- Documentation CD-ROM
  - mounting, 8–2
- documentation set
  - online
    - viewing with Acrobat Reader, 8–5
- DOS tools, C–5
- dxnotepad application, C–19

## E

---

- ECU diskette, 5–3
- ed command
  - ( *See* editor )
- editor
  - ed, 6–48
  - emacs, C–5
  - vi, 6–48
- EISA bus
  - installing operating system on, 5–9
  - obtaining ECU diskette, 5–3

- EISA configuration utility, 5–3
- eject button
  - cannot eject CD-ROM, B–3
- enabling realtime preemption
  - after full installation, 7–10
- environmental monitoring, C–13
- error messages, G–1
- error recovery
  - update installation, 3–25
- errors
  - device busy message, B–3
  - related to LSM configuration, G–3
- /etc/fdmns directory, 4–2
- /etc/fstab file, 3–7
  - mounting user data, 6–41
- /etc/motd, F–1
- Event Manager application, 7–7
- extended system integrated architecture
  - ( *See* EISA bus )

## F

---

- factory installed software
  - ( *See* FIS )
- failed merges, 3–23
- .FailMRG file, E–4
- file
  - conflicting types of, 3–15
  - containing record of installation, F–1
  - core, 3–19
  - crash, 3–19
  - device special, A–2
  - /etc/fstab, 3–7
  - /etc/motd, F–1
  - fverify.log, F–3
  - install.FS.log, F–2
  - install.log, F–2
  - it.log, F–2
  - listing contents of subset, 9–5
  - log files, F–1
  - log files for update installation, 3–22

- merging customizations after
  - update installation, 3-23
- .PreUPD, 3-19
- protected system, E-1
- setld.log, F-3
- unprotected system files, 3-23
- upd\_custom\_files, F-4
- upd\_mergefail\_files, F-4
- upd\_obsolete\_files, F-4
- upd\_PreMRG\_files, F-4
- update.log, F-3
- vmunix, 3-19
- file system
  - creation phase, 6-44
  - minimum size of, 6-36
- file system creation, 6-44
- file system layout
  - customizing, 6-34
  - default, 6-27
- file systems
  - inode density, 6-45
- firmware
  - anonymous FTP, 3-3, 5-7
  - for SRM console, 5-8
  - updating before installation, 5-6
- FIS, 1-5
  - startup procedure, 1-5
- fstab file
  - ( See /etc/fstab )
- full installation
  - adding peripheral devices, 5-10
  - anonymous FTP of firmware, 5-7
  - ATM adapter, 5-9
  - back up system, 5-5
  - boot commands, 6-45
  - booting system, 6-4
  - building kernel during, 6-24
  - canceling, 6-43
  - configuration cloning, 4-5
  - console variables, 6-2
  - custom file system layout, 6-34
  - Custom Setup application, 7-4
  - date and time, 6-13
  - default file system layout, 6-27
  - disk identification, 4-4
  - editing the kernel configuration file, 6-48
  - EISA bus, 5-9
  - enabling realtime preemption, 7-10
  - error messages, G-1
  - feature summary, 4-7
  - features, 4-1
  - file system creation, 6-44
  - final confirmation, 6-42
  - firmware update, 5-6
  - hardware requirements, 5-1
  - history command, 6-8
  - host name, 6-11
  - install.cdf validation errors, G-8
  - installation cloning, 4-5, 6-8
  - installing into LSM volumes, 6-38
  - installing LSM during, 4-3
  - invoking user-supplied scripts, 4-4
  - ISA devices, 5-8
  - log files, 6-49, F-1
  - migrating from Windows NT for Alpha, 5-4
  - minimum size of file systems, 6-36
  - minimum size of root partition, 6-36
  - mounting existing user data, 6-41
  - network adapter mode, 5-7
  - partitioning disks, 6-37
  - prerequisite tasks, 5-1
  - preserving device names, A-4
  - preserving existing data, 6-40
  - private region for LSM, 6-39
  - procedures, 6-1
  - Quick Setup application, 7-3
  - RAID subsystem, 5-9
  - restarting, 6-43
  - root password, 6-18

- run advscan utility to reconstruct
  - `/etc/fdmns` directory, 7–9
- selecting kernel components, 6–46
- selecting software, 6–20
- shutting down system, 5–5
- software configuration, 6–45
- software dependencies, 4–4
- software load phase, 6–44
- software subsets, C–1
- special processing for LSM, 6–39
- starting text-based interface, 6–7
- supplying information for, 6–9
- system reboot, 6–45
- system setup, 7–1
- time zone, 6–14

`fverify.log` file, F–3

## G

---

- generic kernel
  - booting, 5–9
- genvmunix
  - booting, 5–9
- geographic location
  - setting, 6–14
- GNU
  - emacs, C–5
  - RCS, C–11
- graphical user interface
  - for system configuration, 7–6
  - selecting optional software using, 6–22
- graphics support
  - VGA, 5–8

## H

---

- halt states, 6–49
- hardware
  - network adapter mode, 5–7
  - requirements for installation, 5–1
- hardware kernel objects, C–7
- hardware manager command, A–2
- hardware manager utility, A–6

- help
  - for kernel components, 6–47
- history command, 6–8
- host name, 6–11
- hostid
  - for rootdg disk group, G–5
- HTML files, 8–1
- hwmgr command, A–2
- hwmgr utility, A–6

## I

---

- init command, 6–49
- inode density, 6–45
- insight manager
  - software subset for, C–13
- Insight Manager, 7–7
- install.cdf file
  - found during full installation, 6–8
  - validation errors, G–8
- install.FS.log file, F–2
- install.log file, F–2
- installation
  - log files, F–1
- installation cloning, 6–8
  - during full installation, 4–5
  - validation errors, G–8
- installation media, 1–5
- installation procedure, 6–1
- installation types, 1–2
- installing
  - Acrobat Reader, 8–4
  - cluster member, 1–4
  - kernel component subsets, 9–13
  - layered products, D–1
  - software subsets after the installation, 9–4
  - windows applications, C–19
  - X applications, C–19
- installupdate command
  - textual interface option, 3–7
- Integrated System Architecture ( *See* ISA )
- international software, C–20



- IOSWW subsets
  - defined, C-20
- ISA
  - configuration, 5-8
  - device handles, 5-8
  - devices, 5-8
- isacfg command, 5-8
- ISO 9660 CD-ROM format, 6-47
- it.log file, F-2

## J

---

- JAVA
  - software subset, C-5

## K

---

- kernel
  - booting generic kernel, 5-9
  - build failure during update installation, 3-25
  - building, 6-46
  - building during installation, 6-24
  - customization
    - as update installation option, 3-9
  - debugging tools, C-13
  - development subsets, C-7
  - editing kernel configuration file, 6-48
  - enabling realtime preemption, 7-10
  - help for components, 6-47
  - kernel configuration file, 3-14
  - rebuilding after installing ATM adapter, 9-13
  - rebuilding after using setld, 9-13
  - selecting optional components, 6-47
  - table of components, 6-47
- kernel build
  - after system rebuild, 6-46
- kernel components

- selecting, 6-46
- kernel configuration file, 3-14
  - editing during full installation, 6-48
- kernel objects
  - hardware, C-7
  - standard, C-7
- keyboard support, C-16

## L

---

- ldebug debugger
  - software subsets containing, C-11
- language
  - for user interface, 6-6
- LAT
  - building new kernel if installed using setld, 9-13
- layered product
  - installing, D-1
  - kernel build failure during update, 3-25
- layered products
  - conflicting, 3-10
  - installing after the installation, 9-7
  - updating during update installation, 2-2
  - updating whatis database after installing, D-3
- local area transport, C-5
- location
  - setting, 6-14
- locations
  - definitions of acronyms, 6-18
- log files
  - created by installation, F-1
  - for update installation, 3-22
  - location of, F-1
  - /var/adm/smlogs, F-2
- Logical Storage Manager ( *See* LSM )
- LSM

- building new kernel if installed
  - using setld, 9–13
- configuring during full installation, 4–3
- device naming conventions, A–1
- error messages, G–3
- features, 4–3
- installing into volumes, 6–38
- kernel header and common files, C–7
- kernel modules, C–7
- kernel objects, C–7
- multiple hostids for rootdg, G–5
- private region, 6–39
- restarting, G–7
- software subset for, C–13
- special processing during full installation, 6–39
- standard names, 6–39

## M

---

- mail applications subsets, C–8
- man pages
  - updating entries in whatis database, D–3
- mandatory software subsets, C–2
  - conditional, C–1
- manuals
  - viewing online with Acrobat Reader, 8–5
  - viewing online with Netscape Navigator, 8–2
- member0
  - installation messages for, 9–12
- memory
  - minimum requirement, 5–2t
- merge
  - file customizations, 3–23
- merge failure, E–4
- MH, C–8
- minimum file system size, 6–36
- mosaic bookmark conversion, 8–4
- mount

- restrictions
  - mounting same device twice, A–5
- mount point
  - how to mount CD-ROM on, B–2
- mounting
  - CD-ROM, B–2
  - CD-ROM via entry in fstab file, 3–7
  - online documentation set CD-ROM, 8–2
- .mrg. file, E–3
- MULE, C–25
- multiple hostids
  - for rootdg disk group, G–5
- multiprocessor system
  - enabling unattended reboots, 7–10
- multiuser mode, 6–49

## N

---

- name of system, 6–12
- nested X server, C–16
- Netscape FastTrack Server
  - installing, D–3
- Netscape Navigator
  - application integration, 8–3
  - software subset for, C–16
  - using to view online documentation, 8–2
- netscape software subset, C–19
- network
  - configure before installation, 5–7
  - configuring using Quick Setup application, 7–3
  - setting network adapter mode, 5–7
- network adapter mode, 5–7
- network server
  - as installation media, 1–5
- networking services
  - additional, C–8
  - software subset for, C–8
- .new. file, E–2
- notepad, C–19
- NT operating system
  - ( *See* Windows NT for Alpha )

## O

---

- obsolete commands and utilities, C-10
- obsolete files
  - archiving during update installation, 3-9
  - update installation, 3-17
- obsolete locale databases, C-10
- online documentation
  - viewing, 8-1
- online help, 1-6
  - for kernel components, 6-47
- operating system
  - version number and revision level, 2-3
- optional software subsets, C-4

## P

---

- partition
  - for LSM private region, 6-39
- partition disk
  - for custom file system layout, 6-37
- partitions
  - minimum size of file systems, 6-36
- password
  - for root, 6-18
- patches
  - update installation, 2-1
- PDF files, 8-1
- peripheral devices
  - adding, 5-10
- preinstalled software, 1-5
- .PreMRG file, E-3
- .PreMRG file, 3-23
- preserving user data
  - editing /etc/fstab file, 6-41
- .PreUPD file, 3-23
- removing, 3-19
- print
  - configuration application, C-13

- print widget, C-19
- private region
  - for LSM, 6-39
- programming examples, C-11
- protected system file
  - definition, E-1
  - merging, E-3
- .proto.. file, E-2

## Q

---

- Quick Setup application, 7-3

## R

---

- RAID
  - installing operating system on, 5-9
- RAND corporation mail handler
  - ( *See* MH )
- reading
  - online documentation
    - with Acrobat Reader, 8-5
    - with Netscape Navigator, 8-2
- realtime preemption, 7-10
- realtime software development, C-11
- reboot, 6-45
  - enabling unattended reboots, 7-10
  - on multiprocessor platforms, 7-10
  - to multiuser mode, 6-49
  - to single user mode, 6-49
- reboot system automatically, 7-11
- rebuilding the kernel, 9-13
- record of installation, F-1
- recovering disk space
  - during update installation, 3-19
- Redundant Arrays of Independent Disks
  - ( *See* RAID )
- reference pages
  - software subsets for, C-10
  - updating entries in whatis database, D-3

- release notes
  - preinstallation task, 5-3
- removing
  - software subsets, 9-4
- removing software subsets
  - during update installation, 3-20
- restart installation, 6-43
- restart nogui command, 6-7, 6-43
- restriction
  - minimum size of root partition, 6-36
- restrictions
  - for root password, 6-18
- revision level
  - of operating system, 2-3
- RIS
  - errors during update installation, G-11
  - software subset for, C-8
- rolling upgrade of cluster, 2-2
- root account, 6-18
- root file system
  - minimum size of partition, 6-36
- root password
  - restrictions, 6-18
  - specifying, 6-18
- root user
  - defined, 6-18
- rootdg disk group
  - hostid, G-5
- run levels, 6-49

## S

---

- SDK
  - contents of, 5-2
- service tools
  - syscheck software subset, C-13
- setld command, 2-2
- setld utility, 9-1, 9-4
  - building a new kernel after using, 9-13
  - delete failure on cluster, 9-12
  - displaying software subset inventory, 9-5
  - installing software subsets after the installation, 9-7
  - installing software subsets onto a cluster, 9-11
  - load failures on cluster, 9-12
  - options, 9-4
  - removing software, 9-6
  - removing software from a cluster, 9-6
    - syntax of, 9-4
- setld.log file, F-3
- shell
  - UNIX, 4-6
- shutdown command, 5-5
- shutting down the system, 5-5
- single-byte european locals, C-13
- single-user mode, 3-5, 6-49
- software
  - base operating system subsets, C-1
  - cluster rolling upgrade, 2-2
  - installing after an installation, 9-1
  - installing onto a cluster, 9-11
  - listing files in a subset, 9-5
  - listing installed, 9-5
  - managing with setld utility, 9-1
  - managing with SysMan Menu, 9-1
  - preinstalled at factory, 1-5
  - recovery procedures on cluster, 9-12
  - removing after an installation, 9-6
  - removing from a cluster, 9-6
  - selecting during full installation, 6-20
  - worldwide language support, C-20
- software configuration, 6-45
  - error messages, G-14
- software development
  - desktop environment, C-11
  - subsets, C-11
  - tools and utilities, C-11
- Software Distribution Kit, 5-2
- software management

- from SysMan Menu, 9-2
  - using setld, 9-4
- software patches
  - update installation, 2-1
- software subsets
  - ATM commands, C-8
  - conditionally mandatory, C-1
  - configuring after loading, 6-45
  - dependencies, 6-23
  - descriptions of, C-1
  - detecting dependencies, 4-4
  - failure loading during update installation, 3-25
  - for general applications, C-5
  - for ladebug debugger, C-11
  - for reference pages, C-10
  - for system administration, C-13
  - installing and removing after an installation, 9-4
  - kernel build environment, C-7
  - kernel development, C-7
  - listing installed, 9-5
  - load errors, G-9
  - loading phase, 6-44
  - log of installed, F-1
  - mail applications, C-8
  - mandatory, C-2
  - network-server/communications, C-8
  - obsolete commands, utilities, countries, C-10
  - optional, C-4
  - printing environment, C-9
  - removing during update installation, 3-20
  - selecting with graphical user interface, 6-22
  - software development, C-11
  - supplemental documentation, C-13
  - text processing, C-16
  - windowing environment, C-16
  - windows applications, C-19
- source code control system, C-11
- SRM
  - console firmware, 5-8
- SRM console
  - from ARC console, 5-4
- standard header files for C programming, C-11
- standard kernel objects, C-7
- standard programmer commands, C-11
- static libraries, C-11
- superuser
  - ( *See root user* )
  - how to become, 3-5
- syscheck utility
  - software subset for, C-13
- SysMan Menu, 7-7
  - installing software using, 9-1
  - software management, 9-2
- sysman tools, 7-7
- system accounting utilities, C-13
- system administration
  - Custom Setup application, 7-4
  - documents, 7-9
  - Quick Setup application, 7-3
  - software for utilities, C-13
  - software subsets for, C-13
  - sysman tools, 7-7
  - System Setup utility, 7-1
- system configuration
  - after full installation, 7-1
- system configuration applications, 7-6
- system date and time
  - specifying, 6-13
- system exercisers
  - software to diagnose problems, C-13
- system management and monitoring, 7-7
- system management utilities, C-13

system name, 6-12  
system reboot  
    after software load, 6-45  
System Reference Manual  
    ( *See SRM* )  
system setup  
    after full installation, 7-1  
System Setup utility, 7-1

## T

---

tape device  
    naming convention, A-1  
TCR  
    ( *See TruCluster Software Support* )  
terminfo databases  
    additional, C-5  
text processing software subsets,  
    C-16  
text-based interface  
    restarting from graphical interface,  
        6-7  
    using history command to go back,  
        6-8  
time  
    entering for the system, 6-13  
    to complete update installation, 2-8  
time zone  
    changing, 6-14  
    setting, 6-14  
tk toolkit commands, C-5  
troubleshooting, G-1  
troubleshooting software  
    installing system exerciser  
        software, C-13  
TruCluster Software Support  
    defined, 2-2  
    rolling upgrade, 2-2  
TrueType Font Renderer  
    software subset for, C-16  
tzselect utility, 6-14

## U

---

unattended reboot, 7-10  
UNIX shell  
    access from full installation, 4-6  
UNIX SVID2 compatibility, C-5  
unmounting a CD-ROM, B-3  
unprotected system file, 3-23  
upd\_custom\_files file, F-4  
upd\_mergefail\_files file, F-4  
upd\_obsolete\_files file, F-4  
upd\_PreMRG\_files file, F-4  
updadmin utility  
    defined, 3-24  
    running after cluster rolling  
        upgrade, 3-24  
update installation  
    adding optional software, 2-2  
    affects on files, E-1  
    analysis phase, 2-6  
    analysis phase errors, G-12  
    analysis phase failure, 3-25  
    anonymous FTP of firmware, 3-3  
    archiving obsolete files, 3-9  
    building a custom kernel, 3-9  
    CDSL, 3-3  
    cluster rolling upgrade, 2-2  
    completion time, 2-8  
    conflicting layered products, 3-10  
    data preserved during, 2-1  
    device names  
        mapping old to new, A-5  
    device names changed during, 3-22  
    disk space, 3-18  
    error messages, G-10  
    error recovery, 3-25  
    errors from a CD-ROM, G-10  
    errors from RIS, G-11  
    failed merges, 3-23  
    .FailMRG file, E-4  
    features, 2-3  
    file type conflicts, 3-15  
    kernel build failures, 3-25  
    kernel configuration file, 3-14

- layered products update, 2-2
- log files, 3-22
- merge failure, E-4
- merging file customizations, 3-23
- merging protected system file, E-3
- .mrg.. file, E-3
- .new.. file, E-2
- obsolete files, 3-17
- overview of features, 2-1
- patches, 2-1
- .PreMRG file, E-3
- .PreMRG files, 3-23
- prerequisite tasks, 3-2
- .PreUPD files, 3-19, 3-23
- procedures, 3-1
- protected system file, E-1
- .proto.. file, E-2
- removing software subsets, 3-20
- removing unnecessary files, 3-19
- selecting kernel components, 3-13
- shut down system, 3-5
- software subset load failure, 3-25
- starting, 3-5
- successive path to latest version, 2-3
- theory of operation, 2-5
- unprotected system files, 3-23
- /updmnt mount point, G-11
- update installation cleanup utility, 3-24
- update.log file, F-3
- updating
  - system firmware, 5-6
- updating layered products
  - during update installation, 2-2
- /updmnt mount point, G-11
- user information
  - preserving data on during installation, 6-40
- user interface
  - selecting a language for, 6-6
- user-supplied files

- invoking during full installation, 4-4
- /usr/sbin/checklist, 7-1
- /usr/sbin/sysman, 7-7
- uucp, C-5

## V

---

- validation errors
  - install.cdf file, G-8
- /var/adm/smlogs, F-2
- variables
  - boot\_osflags, 6-45
  - bootdef\_dev, 6-45
- version number
  - of operating system, 2-3
- VGA graphics support, 5-8
- vi command
  - ( *See editor* )
- viewing
  - online documentation
    - with Acrobat Reader, 8-5
    - with Netscape Navigator, 8-2
- virtual X frame buffer, C-16
- vmunix files
  - removal of, 3-19
- vold daemon
  - restarting, G-7
- voliod daemon
  - restarting, G-7
- volume
  - installing into LSM, 6-38

## W

---

- whatis database
  - updating, D-3
- windows applications, C-19
- Windows NT for Alpha
  - migrating to Tru64 UNIX, 5-4
- WLS
  - defined, 4-2

- installing during full installation,  
4-2
- software subsets, C-20
- worldwide ID
  - determining, A-6
  - for device names, A-3
- worldwide language support  
( *See* WLS )
- worldwide web browser  
using Netscape, 8-2

## **X**

---

- X applications, C-19
  - additional, C-16
- X customizations for OEMs, C-16
- X demo applications, C-16

- X environment, C-16
- X fonts, C-16
- X servers
  - for PCbus, C-16
  - for Turbochannel, C-16
- X Window System Image Extension  
( *See* XIE )
- X/Motif version 1.1, C-16
- X/Window and X/Motif
  - header files, C-11
  - programming examples, C-11
  - software development, C-11
  - static libraries, C-11
- XIE
  - version 5 online documentation,  
C-13



---

## How to Order Tru64 UNIX Documentation

To order Tru64 UNIX documentation in the United States and Canada, call **800-344-4825**. In other countries, contact your local Compaq subsidiary.

If you have access to Compaq's intranet, you can place an order at the following Web site:

<http://asmorder.nqo.dec.com/>

If you need help deciding which documentation best meets your needs, see the Tru64 UNIX *Documentation Overview*, which describes the structure and organization of the Tru64 UNIX documentation and provides brief overviews of each document.

The following table provides the order numbers for the Tru64 UNIX operating system documentation kits. For additional information about ordering this and related documentation, see the *Documentation Overview* or contact Compaq.

---

Name	Order Number
Tru64 UNIX Documentation CD-ROM	QA-6ADAA-G8
Tru64 UNIX Documentation Kit	QA-6ADAA-GZ
End User Documentation Kit	QA-6ADAB-GZ
Startup Documentation Kit	QA-6ADAC-GZ
General User Documentation Kit	QA-6ADAD-GZ
System and Network Management Documentation Kit	QA-6ADAE-GZ
Developer's Documentation Kit	QA-6ADAF-GZ
Reference Pages Documentation Kit	QA-6ADAG-GZ
TruCluster Server Documentation Kit	QA-6BRAA-GZ

---



---

## Reader's Comments

**Tru64 UNIX**  
Installation Guide  
AA-RH8SC-TE

Compaq welcomes your comments and suggestions on this manual. Your input will help us to write documentation that meets your needs. Please send your suggestions using one of the following methods:

- This postage-paid form
- Internet electronic mail: [readers\\_comment@zk3.dec.com](mailto:readers_comment@zk3.dec.com)
- Fax: (603) 884-0120, Attn: UBPG Publications, ZKO3-3/Y32

If you are not using this form, please be sure you include the name of the document, the page number, and the product name and version.

**Please rate this manual:**

	Excellent	Good	Fair	Poor
Accuracy (software works as manual says)	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Clarity (easy to understand)	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Organization (structure of subject matter)	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Figures (useful)	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Examples (useful)	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Index (ability to find topic)	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Usability (ability to access information quickly)	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

**Please list errors you have found in this manual:**

Page	Description
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

**Additional comments or suggestions to improve this manual:**

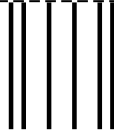
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

**What version of the software described by this manual are you using?** \_\_\_\_\_

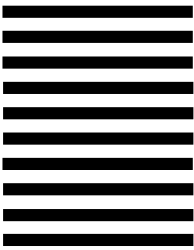
Name, title, department \_\_\_\_\_  
Mailing address \_\_\_\_\_  
Electronic mail \_\_\_\_\_  
Telephone \_\_\_\_\_  
Date \_\_\_\_\_

----- Do Not Cut or Tear - Fold Here and Tape -----

**COMPAQ**



NO POSTAGE  
NECESSARY IF  
MAILED IN THE  
UNITED STATES



**BUSINESS REPLY MAIL**  
FIRST CLASS MAIL PERMIT NO. 33 MAYNARD MA

POSTAGE WILL BE PAID BY ADDRESSEE

COMPAQ COMPUTER CORPORATION  
UBPG PUBLICATIONS MANAGER  
ZKO3-3/Y32  
110 SPIT BROOK RD  
NASHUA NH 03062-2698



----- Do Not Cut or Tear - Fold Here -----

Cut on This Line